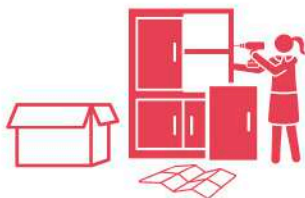




WITH  
FREE ONLINE  
**AUDIO**



put together



go up

# ENGLISH

## FOR EVERYONE

### ENGLISH PHRASAL VERBS



trip over



take down



LEARN AND PRACTISE MORE THAN 1,000 ENGLISH PHRASAL VERBS

## Authors

---

**Thomas Booth** worked for 10 years as an English-language teacher in Poland and Russia. He now lives in England, where he works as an editor and English-language materials writer. He has contributed to a number of books in the *English for Everyone* series.

**Ben Ffrancon Davies** is a freelance writer and translator. He writes textbooks and study guides on a wide range of subjects including ELT, music, and literature. Ben studied Medieval and Modern Languages at the University of Oxford, and has taught English in France and Spain.

## UK language consultant

---

**Peter Dainty** studied History at the University of Oxford and has been teaching English as a foreign language since the mid-1980s. He taught at London University for 10 years and has written 14 books for publishers such as Macmillan, Penguin, Scholastic, and Oxford University Press.

## US language consultant

---

**Professor Emerita Susan Barduhn** has contributed to numerous publications. She has also been President of IATEFL; Director of The Language Center, Nairobi; Deputy Director of International House, London; professor and Chair of the MATESOL program at SIT Graduate Institute. She is currently a freelance educational consultant for the US Department of State, the British Council, TransformELT, The Consultants-e, and Fulbright.

# ENGLISH FOR EVERYONE

## ENGLISH PHRASAL VERBS





Penguin  
Random  
House

#### DK LONDON

**Senior Editor** Ben Ffrancon Davies  
**Senior Art Editors** Clare Shedden, Amy Child  
**Illustrator** Gus Scott  
**Managing Editor** Christine Stroyan  
**Managing Art Editor** Anna Hall  
**Production Editor** George Nimmo  
**Production Controller** Samantha Cross  
**Jacket Designer** Surabhi Wadhwa-Gandhi  
**Jacket Design Development Manager** Sophia MTT  
**Publisher** Andrew Macintyre  
**Art Director** Karen Self  
**Publishing Director** Jonathan Metcalf

#### DK DELHI

**Senior Editor** Janashree Singha  
**Editors** Nandini D. Tripathy, Rishi Bryan  
**Senior Art Editor** Vikas Sachdeva  
**Project Art Editor** Sourabh Challariya  
**Senior DTP Designer** Tarun Sharma  
**DTP Designers** Manish Upreti, Anita Yadav  
**Senior Jacket Designer** Suhita Dharamjit  
**Senior Managing Art Editor** Arunesh Talapatra  
**Managing Editor** Soma B. Chowdhury  
**Pre-production Managers** Balwant Singh, Sunil Sharma  
**Editorial Head** Glenda Fernandes  
**Design Head** Malavika Talukder

First published in Great Britain in 2021 by  
Dorling Kindersley Limited  
DK, One Embassy Gardens, 8 Viaduct Gardens,  
London, SW11 7BW

Copyright © 2021 Dorling Kindersley Limited  
A Penguin Random House Company  
10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1  
001-318636-Mar/2021

All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in or introduced  
into a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form, or by any means  
(electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise),  
without the prior written permission of the copyright owner.

A CIP catalogue record for this book  
is available from the British Library.  
ISBN: 978-0-2414-3939-5

Printed and bound in China

For the curious  
[www.dk.com](http://www.dk.com)



# Contents

How to use this book 6

Introducing phrasal verbs 10

## DESCRIBING PEOPLE AND THINGS

01 People and things 18

02 Family 22

03 Relationships 26

04 Visiting people 30

05 Socializing 34

06 Clothing 38

07 Before and after 42

## EVERYDAY LIFE

08 Everyday life 44

09 Transportation 48

10 Shopping 52

11 The weather 56

12 Technology 60

13 Crime, the law, and politics 64

14 Money 68

15 Time 72

16 Past and future 76

17 Making plans 80

18 The senses 84

19 Movement and progress 88



## WORK AND SCHOOL

20	Studying and research	92
21	At school	96
22	At work	100
23	Careers	104
24	Business	108
25	Numbers and amounts	112
26	Success and failure	116

## HOME AND FREE TIME

27	At home	120
28	Chores	124
29	Cooking	128
30	Food and drink	132
31	Free time	136
32	Health	140
33	Sports and exercise	144
34	The arts	148
35	Travel	150

## COMMUNICATION

36	Talking	154
37	Reading and writing	158
38	Keeping in touch	162
39	Thoughts and ideas	166
40	Explaining things	170
41	Truth and lies	172
42	Encouragement	176

## EMOTIONS AND SITUATIONS

43	Agreeing and disagreeing	178
44	Opinions and arguments	182
45	Emotions	186
46	Negative emotions	190
47	Making decisions	194
48	Making mistakes	198
49	Accidents and damage	200
50	Problems and solutions	204
51	Secrets and surprises	208

## COMMON VERBS

52	"Come," "make," and "do"	212
53	"Get" and "set"	216
54	"Go"	220
55	"Put," "take," and "give"	224
56	Exclamations	228

<b>Reference</b>	230
Verbs and particles	230
Common particles	231
Common separable phrasal verbs	234
Common inseparable phrasal verbs	235
Common phrasal nouns	236
Common phrasal adjectives	237

<b>Answers</b>	238
----------------	-----

<b>Index of phrasal verbs</b>	251
-------------------------------	-----

<b>Acknowledgments</b>	256
------------------------	-----

# How to use this book

*English for Everyone: English Phrasal Verbs* will help you learn, understand, and remember the most common phrasal verbs in English. Each of the 56 units in the book consists of a teaching spread on a subject or theme, with illustrated sentences to place the phrasal verbs in context, and then a practice spread with exercises to reinforce what you have learned. Listen to the free audio and repeat each phrasal verb and sentence. The answers to all the exercises are at the back of the book, along with a comprehensive index.

**Unit number** The book is divided into units. The unit number helps you keep track of your progress.

**Sample sentences** Phrasal verbs are shown in the context of a sample sentence (see page 8).

**Module number** Every module is identified with a unique number, so you can easily locate the related audio.

**UK/US phrasal verbs** Some phrasal verbs are specific to UK or US English. These are labeled (UK) or (US).

**Base forms and definitions** Beneath each sentence, the phrasal verb is written in its base form along with a definition.

**Write-on lines** You are encouraged to write your own translations of English phrasal verbs to create your own reference pages.

**Modules** Many teaching spreads are broken into modules covering different topics within the theme.

## 15 Time

### 15.1 TIME

The journey **dragged on** for hours.  
The kids were so bored!  
**drag on**  
continue for a long time (negative)



Mikhail **dragged out** his speech for so long that some of the audience fell asleep.  
**drag out**  
make something last too long (negative)



Time's **getting on** now. Let's hurry home before it gets dark.  
**get on** (UK)  
become late (about the time)



As the years **went by**, I grew to love Phil's sense of humor.  
**go by**  
pass (about time)



We take the children to the park every afternoon to **break up** the day.  
**break up**  
break (a day or period of time) into separate parts



The deadline for the project **crept up on** us.  
**creep up (on)**  
happen slowly to someone without them noticing it



The doctor's busy at the moment, but I'll try to **fit you in** later today.  
**fit in**  
make time for something



I enjoy **whiling away** the hours reading novels and comic books.  
**while away**  
pass the time in a relaxed way



### 15.2 WAITING

Hi Sally! Can you **hang on** a minute while I grab my umbrella?  
**hang on**  
wait for a short time (informal)



The service here is terrible! It's **holding everyone up**.  
**hold up**  
make someone or something late



Danny wasn't able to finish because he **ran out of** time.  
**run out (of)**  
have no more (time)

Cleaning the house **took up** Liam's weekend.  
**take up**  
occupy, use up (someone's time)

Your session has **timed out**. Please log in again.  
**time out**  
log someone out of a computer, server or website because of inactivity

Commuting to and from work **eats into** my time.  
**eat into**  
take up too much (of someone's time)

Chris was sitting in the car waiting for his girlfriend to arrive.  
**wait for**  
stay somewhere or delay something until something happens

**Listening exercise** This symbol indicates that you should listen to an audio track in order to answer the questions in the exercise.

AND THE STATEMENTS AND  
THE CORRECT MEANING

- her colleagues.
- watched her colleagues. ☒
- er colleagues are spies. ☐
- s of tomato and basil.
- only tomato and basil in it. ☐
- a tomato and basil flavor. ☐
- ssing tomato and basil. ☐
- through his telescope.
- at a telescope. ☐
- telescope. ☐
- ic telescope. ☐

**18.5** LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND  
MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE  
CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

look at

taste of

listen in on

sniff around

See also:  
break up 3, 21, 29, 38 creep up on 51 fit in 15  
get on 2, 9 go by 54 run out (of) 30 take up 31, 55

the exam

**Hurry up, Oliver! The train's going to leave soon!**

**hurry up**  
move or do something more quickly

**I can't believe how quickly winter's come around again!**

**come around**  
happen again (about a regular event)

**Our professor always draws out our lectures by answering lots of questions at the end.**

**draw out**  
make something last longer than necessary

**Quitting my job at the café has freed up more time for my studies.**

**free up**  
make more time available

**When the train was canceled, the passengers had to wait around for the next one.**

**wait around (for)**  
do nothing until something happens

73

**Sample answer** The first question of each exercise is answered for you, to help make the task easy to understand.

**Exercise number** Each exercise is identified with a unique number, so you can easily locate answers.

**Exercise instruction** Each exercise is introduced with a brief instruction, telling you what you need to do.

**Aa 18.7** MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

raise yourself to see past an obstacle

secretly listen to someone

cause somewhere to smell unpleasant

pay attention to notice something

receive information about something

pay attention

listen to someone without interrupting

watch something without taking part

hear out

listen up

look over

stink out

look out for

look on

hear about

listen in (on)

**Aa 18.8** FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

The scary scene in the movie made everyone look away.

1 Alex's cookies \_\_\_\_\_ cinnamon. I asked to try one.

2 Have you \_\_\_\_\_ the new gym in town? It's supposed to be great.

3 Dayita \_\_\_\_\_ the radio while she ate her breakfast.

4 Fiona \_\_\_\_\_ her colleagues to steal their ideas.

5 Sarah and Dionne \_\_\_\_\_ the well. There was no sign of the bottom.

smelled of

spied on

look-away

looked into

listened to

heard about

87

**PRACTICE SPREAD**

**Space for writing** You are encouraged to write your answers in the book for future reference.

**Supporting graphics** Illustrations help you understand and remember new phrasal verbs.

**Audio support** All teaching modules are supported by audio recordings to help you recognize and pronounce spoken vocabulary.

# Sample sentences

Each phrasal verb is shown within a sample sentence that contextualizes its meaning. Its base form and definition are also given.

**Phrasal verb** The phrasal verb is highlighted in each sentence.

**Illustration** Each sentence is illustrated to show the meaning of the phrasal verb.

Angela **meets up with** her colleagues once a week to discuss all their new ideas.

**Base form** The phrasal verb is given in the base form.

**Definition** A definition is given to help you understand the meaning.

• **meet up (with)**  
• *get together with*



**Third particle** Sometimes a phrasal verb's third particle is optional (see page 12), so it is written in parentheses.

## "See also" boxes

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning. Each unit has a "see also" box which directs you to other units where the same phrasal verbs appear with different meanings.

**Unit number** This number tells you which other unit the phrasal verb appears in.

### See also:

back up **12** climb down **19** fall out **49**  
make up **41, 52** take back **10, 16, 55**

## DING CONFLICT

leagues always make fun  
s, but he just **laughs it off**.

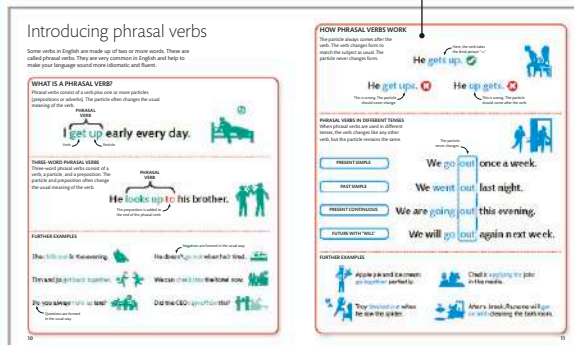
icism or a difficult  
hating at it



## Introducing phrasal verbs

Pages 10–17 contain an introductory grammar section explaining what phrasal verbs are and how they work grammatically. It also covers different types of phrasal verbs, as well as phrasal nouns and adjectives.

**Modular learning** The grammar section is broken down into modules.



# Audio

*English for Everyone: English Phrasal Verbs* offers extensive supporting audio resources. Every phrasal verb and sentence in the teaching spreads is recorded, and you are encouraged to listen to the audio and repeat the phrases and sentences out loud, until you are confident you understand and can pronounce what has been said.



## SUPPORTING AUDIO

This symbol indicates that audio recordings of the phrasal verbs and sentences in a module are available for you to listen to.



## LISTENING EXERCISES

This symbol indicates that you should listen to an audio track in order to answer the questions in the exercise.



## FREE AUDIO

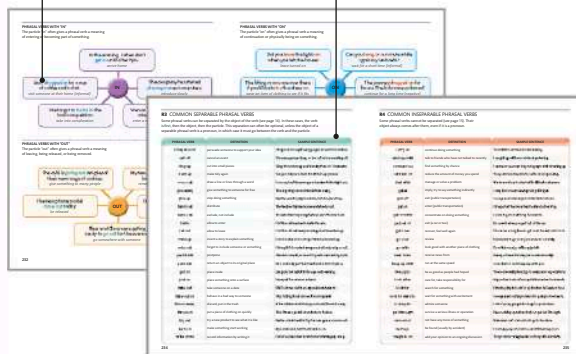
website and app  
[www.dkefe.com](http://www.dkefe.com)

# Reference section

At the end of the book, pages 230–237 contain a reference section, which features additional information about phrasal verbs, including examples of some common phrasal nouns and phrasal adjectives.

**Visual diagrams** are used to present common particles.

**Reference tables** contain lists of common phrasal verbs, nouns, and adjectives.



# Answers

The book is designed to make it easy to monitor your progress. Answers are provided for every exercise, so you can see how well you have understood and remembered the phrasal verbs you have learned.

**Answers** Find the answers to every exercise printed at the back of the book.

**Exercise numbers** These numbers match the number at the top-left corner of each exercise.

25

**25.3**

- ① The number of people online shot up last year.
- ② The coach divided the team into two equal teams.
- ③ Shreya counted up the money she was wanting coffee and we...
- ④ When Georgia was she added on a 20% tip.

**25.4**

A 3 B 1 C 6 D 2

**25.5**

- ① Katie's bills have been a lot of debt now.
- ② The company's share price but it's finally starting to...
- ③ The temperature was but it averages out at a...
- ④ We estimated the cost to be £14,900, but rounded...

# Index

The index contains every phrasal verb from the teaching spreads, as well as the phrasal nouns and adjectives from the reference section, listed in alphabetical order, followed by each unit and module number where they appear.

M

made-up R6  
major in (US) 20.1  
make for 37.2, 52.2  
make into 34.1  
make of 52.2  
make off with 52.2  
make out 41.2, 52.2  
make up 41.2, 44.3, 52.2  
    see also made-up R6  
make up for 43.2  
mark down 20.2  
measure out 29.1  
measure up (to) 7.2  
meet up (with) 22.2  
mess around 21.2, 41.2  
mess up 49.1  
mill around 5.1

## Module number

The number in the index matches the module number on the teaching page.

## Multiple units

When a phrasal verb appears more than once, each module number is listed.



# Introducing phrasal verbs

Some verbs in English are made up of two or more words. These are called phrasal verbs. They are very common in English and help to make your language sound more idiomatic and fluent.

## WHAT IS A PHRASAL VERB?

Phrasal verbs consist of a verb plus one or more particles (prepositions or adverbs). The particle often changes the usual meaning of the verb.



## THREE-WORD PHRASAL VERBS

Three-word phrasal verbs consist of a verb, a particle, and a preposition. The particle and preposition often change the usual meaning of the verb.



## FURTHER EXAMPLES

She **chills out** in the evening.



He **doesn't go out** when he's tired.



Tim and Jo **got back together**.



We can **check into** the hotel now.



Do you always **turn up** late?



Did the CEO **sign off on** this?



Questions are formed in the usual way.



## HOW PHRASAL VERBS WORK

The particle always comes after the verb. The verb changes form to match the subject as usual. The particle never changes form.

Here, the verb takes the third person "-s."

He **gets up**. ✓



He **get ups**. ✗

This is wrong. The particle should never change.

He **up gets**. ✗

This is wrong. The particle should come after the verb.

## PHRASAL VERBS IN DIFFERENT TENSES

When phrasal verbs are used in different tenses, the verb changes like any other verb, but the particle remains the same.



PRESENT SIMPLE

The particle never changes.

We **go out** once a week.

PAST SIMPLE

We **went out** last night.

PRESENT CONTINUOUS

We **are going out** this evening.

FUTURE WITH "WILL"

We **will go out** again next week.

## FURTHER EXAMPLES



Apple pie and ice cream **go together** perfectly.



Chad is **applying for** jobs in the media.



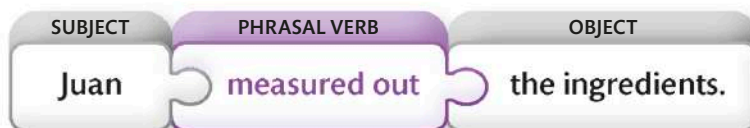
Troy **freaked out** when he saw the spider.



After a break, Ramone will **get on with** cleaning the bathroom.

## TRANSITIVE AND INTRANSITIVE PHRASAL VERBS

Some phrasal verbs take an object, which is a noun that receives the action of the verb. Verbs which take an object are known as **transitive verbs**.



Some phrasal verbs do not take an object. These verbs are known as **intransitive verbs**.



Some phrasal verbs can be either **transitive** or **intransitive**.



"Tidy up" can be used with or without an object.



### MAKING INTRANSITIVE PHRASAL VERBS TRANSITIVE

Some intransitive phrasal verbs need a preposition when they are made transitive.

At the end of their stay,  
Julia and John **checked out**.



At the end of their stay, Julia and  
John **checked out of** their hotel.

To use "check out" with an object, you need to add "of."

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

Julian usually **heads off** early  
to avoid the traffic.



Julian usually **heads off to** work  
early to avoid the traffic.

Ben and Gus finally **made up**  
after their argument.



Ben **made up with** Gus after  
their argument.

## DIFFERENT MEANINGS

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning. Some phrasal verbs appear in this book more than once with a different meaning each time.

### UNRELATED MEANINGS

The phrasal verb “do up” has two unrelated meanings.

Mirek **did up** his coat to keep out the icy breeze.

*fasten a piece of clothing*



Emily is **doing up** her house at the moment.

*improve, renovate*



### LITERAL AND METAPHORICAL MEANINGS

Certain phrasal verbs have a basic literal meaning, and a more complicated metaphorical one.

This sentence uses the literal meaning of “break up.” The chocolate is being separated into smaller pieces.

Patrick **broke up** the chocolate before adding it to the cake mixture.

*separate something into smaller pieces*



In this sentence, nothing has literally broken, but Maria and Pablo have metaphorically separated from each other.

After a huge argument, Maria and Pablo decided to **break up**.

*end a romantic relationship*



### REGISTER

Although some phrasal verbs can be used in formal situations, others are more informal. Many phrasal verbs have a single-word equivalent which is more formal.

This sentence uses the high-register word “persevere,” which is only usually used in formal language.

Despite the storm, the engineers **persevered** and installed the new phone line.



This sentence means exactly the same thing, but “soldier on” makes the sentence less formal.

Despite the storm, the engineers **soldiered on** and installed the new phone line.

## SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

If a phrasal verb has an object, the object can sometimes go between the verb and the particle. This does not change the meaning. Phrasal verbs that do this are called "separable" phrasal verbs. See page 234 for more examples.

He is **picking up** litter.

The object can go after the particle.

He is **picking** litter **up**.

The object can also go between the verb and the particle.

He is **picking it up**.

If the object of a separable phrasal verb is a pronoun, it must go between the verb and particle.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I **turned on** the light.



I **turned** the light **on**.

Can you **pick up** that box?



Can you **pick** that box **up**?

You should **throw away** those old shoes.



You should **throw** those old shoes **away**.

I was annoyed because he **woke up** the baby.



I was annoyed because he **woke** her **up**.

I always **fill up** the water jug when it's empty.



I always **fill it up** when it's empty.



### COMMON MISTAKES SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

If the direct object of a separable phrasal verb is a pronoun, it must go between the verb and the particle.

Pronoun

He **picked it up**. ✓

The pronoun cannot go at the end of the sentence.

He **picked up it**. ✗



## INSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

Some phrasal verbs cannot be separated. The object must always come after the particle—it can never sit between the verb and the particle. This is true whether the object is a noun or a pronoun. See page 235 for more examples.



We had to run to **get on** the train. ✓

The verb and the particle must stay together.

We had to run to **get on** it. ✓

The verb and particle stay together even if the direct object is a pronoun.

We had to run to **get** the train **on**. ✗

This is wrong. The object cannot sit between the verb and the particle.

### FURTHER EXAMPLES

I've **come across** a new recipe.



He **sleeps in** most Saturdays.



I need to **go over** my notes.



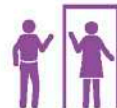
I **ran into** her at the supermarket.



Susan really **takes after** her father, they're very similar.



**Drop by** the house any time you like.



## SEPARABLE AND INSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

Some phrasal verbs, like "get back from," can be separable or inseparable depending on the context.

When "get back from" means "retrieve from" it is separable. The object must go between "get" and "back."

I finally **got** my lawnmower **back from** Dave.



When "get back from" means "return from," it is always inseparable.

I **got back from** Italy yesterday.



## PHRASAL NOUNS

Some nouns are formed from phrasal verbs, often by joining the verb and the particle together.



See page 236  
for a list of common  
phrasal nouns.

Verb → Particle

The teacher asked me to **hand out** the exam papers.

The teacher gave us a **handout** for the lesson.

↑  
Phrasal noun



Sometimes, the noun is formed by putting the particle in front of the verb.

Oh no! It was sunny and now it's **pouring down**.



We have a rainy season with daily **downpours**.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

The company is trying to **cut back** on staff expenses.



Not another **cutback**! The company must be in serious trouble.

It's a shame that he wants to **drop out** of school.



We've had a surprisingly high percentage of **dropouts** in the class.

We want to **get away** and go somewhere sunny this winter.



A trip to Australia sounds like a fabulous **getaway**.



## PHRASAL ADJECTIVES

Some adjectives are formed from phrasal verbs, often by joining the verb and the particle together, sometimes with a hyphen.



See page 237  
for a list of common  
phrasal adjectives.

Verb

Particle

Zane asked James to **tone down** his language.

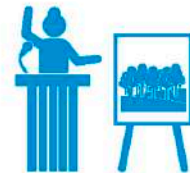
Zane asked James to use more **toned-down** language.

Phrasal adjective

Sometimes, the adjective is formed by putting the particle in front of the verb.

Anetta is always **speaking out** about environmental issues.

Anetta is very **outspoken** about environmental issues.



### FURTHER EXAMPLES

For this yoga position, you have to **stretch** your arms **out**.



Simon got into position with his arms **outstretched**.

Ed **watered down** his opinion when writing his review.



Ed wrote a **watered-down** version of his real opinion for the review.

Kemal **knocked down** the price of jewelry by 15%.



Kemal sold some of his jewelry at a **knockdown** price.

## 1.1 PEOPLE

Hundreds of people **packed into** the town hall to watch the debate.

pack into  
fit into a place in large numbers



I found it really hard to **fit in with** the art class. They're all much younger than me.

fit in (with)  
feel like you belong in a group



Some of the older children have been **ganging up on** me and calling me names.

gang up (on)  
form a group to hurt someone



Sheila's neighbors **look down on** her because her house is smaller than theirs.

look down on  
think you are better than another person



I got my son a puppy for his birthday. After asking me for months, he finally **wore me down!**

wear down  
convince someone to do what you want (often by asking many times)



I bumped into Sandra at the park. She was **asking after** you.

ask after  
ask for news about someone



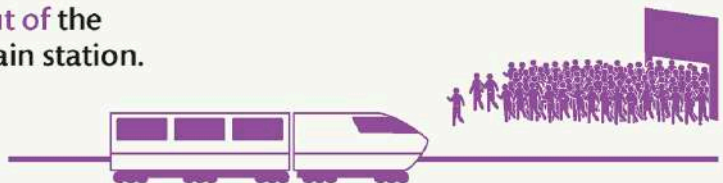
Thousands of fans **flooded into** the stadium to watch the singer perform.

flood in(to)  
enter a space in large numbers



After the concert, everyone **spilled out of** the stadium and made their way to the train station.

spill out (of)  
leave a space in large numbers



See also:

come across 39, 52 fit in 15 get back (from) 35  
turn to 27 turn up 4, 27

My sister **watched over** our son while Ania and I went shopping.

**watch over**

*make sure nothing bad happens to someone or something*



Adi has got a temper. He **turned on** me the instant I suggested he buy a new suit.

**turn on**

*attack someone without warning*



Toshiro's been **buttering** his brother **up** because he wants to borrow his car.

**butter up**

*praise or flatter someone so that they will do you a favor*



Jordan's aunts always **fuss over** him when they come to visit.

**fuss over**

*pay a lot of attention to someone*



Barney really **looks up to** his grandfather. He loves listening to his stories.

**look up to**

*admire someone*



## 1.2 THINGS

Nuwa **gathered up** the plates from the table and took them to the kitchen.

**gather up**

*collect things together*



It was really hard to **part with** my old car. I'd had it since I was a student.

**part with**

*relinquish something important to you*



While looking through things in my attic, I **came across** an old portrait of my great-grandfather.

**come across**

*find something by chance*



Mel lent Dave her lawnmower a month ago, and she finally **got it back from** him.

**get back (from)**

*retrieve something*



Ava lost her passport ages ago. It **turned up** when she was cleaning the living room.

**turn up**

*be found (usually by accident)*





## Aa 1.3 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Barney really looks up to his grandfather.

He loves his grandfather. ☐

He admires his grandfather. ☒

He hates his grandfather. ☐

① After the concert, everyone spilled out of the stadium.

People entered the stadium together. ☐

People ran around the stadium together. ☐

People left the stadium in large numbers. ☐

② Toshiro's been buttering his brother up.

He has been flattering him for a favor. ☐

He has been yelling at him. ☐

He has been arguing with him. ☐

③ Sheila's arrogant neighbors look down on her.

They think they are better than her. ☐

They think she is better than them. ☐

They think she is wonderful. ☐

④ I came across an old portrait of my great-grandfather.

I threw away the portrait. ☐

I found the portrait by chance. ☐

I looked for the portrait. ☐

## Aa 1.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I found it hard to fit in with the art class.



It was hard to part with my old car.



Sandra was asking after you at the park.



Jordan's aunts fuss over him when they visit.



Nuwa gathered up the plates from the table.

## Aa 1.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Hundreds of people packed ~~into~~ / ~~over~~ / ~~through~~ the town hall to watch the debate.

① Some of the older children have been ~~mobbing~~ / ~~ganging~~ / ~~teaming~~ up on me and calling me names.

② Ava lost her passport ages ago. It turned ~~out~~ / ~~on~~ / ~~up~~ when she was cleaning the living room.

③ Adi has got a temper. He ~~pivoted~~ / ~~turned~~ / ~~rotated~~ on me the instant I suggested he buy a new suit.

④ Mel lent Dave her lawnmower a month ago, and she finally got it ~~back~~ / ~~forward~~ / ~~down~~ from him.

Aa

## 1.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

retrieve something

=

get back (from)

① be found (usually by accident)

=

② make sure nothing bad happens to someone

=

③ attack someone without warning

=

④ convince someone to do what you want

=

⑤ fit into a place in large numbers

=

watch over

turn up

wear down

pack into

~~get back (from)~~

turn on



## 1.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES BELOW THE IMAGES



Thousands of fans flooded into the stadium.



③ I got my son a puppy. After asking me for months, he finally \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_ !



① Some of the older children have been \_\_\_\_\_ on me and calling me names.



④ Hundreds of people \_\_\_\_\_ the town hall to watch the debate.



② Mel lent Dave her lawnmower a month ago, and she finally \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ from him.



⑤ Barney really \_\_\_\_\_ his grandfather. He loves listening to his stories.

# 02 Family

## 2.1 FAMILY

Dan and Sheila have **brought up** their children to be kind to animals.

bring up  
teach children how to behave



Colin **lives with** his son in a house at the edge of town.

live with  
share the same house



Jenny's **grown out of** her old toys. She prefers playing video games now.

grow out of  
lose interest in something as you get older



Liam **gets on** very well **with** his elder sister. They're always laughing together.

get on (with)  
have a good relationship with someone



Sam wants to be a pilot when he **grows up**.

grow up  
develop from child to adult



Albert's parents **named** him **after** his great-grandfather.

name after  
give someone the same name as someone else



## 2.2 PETS

Lisa **puts** her rabbit **in** its cage each evening before bed.

put in  
place inside



I **let** the cat **out** every morning after I've woken up.

let out  
allow to leave



Fiona's cat doesn't like strangers, but he's **warming to** Dan.

warm to  
become fond of



I **let** the cat **in** when it started to rain.

let in  
allow to enter





**See also:**

get on **9, 15** grow out of **6** let out **6**  
live with **47** settle down **45**

After traveling for a few years, Bill **settled down** and bought a house next door to his parents.

settle down

live in one place



My mother **looks after** my children while I'm at work.

look after

care for, take responsibility for



Jasmine **takes after** her mother. They're very similar people.

take after

have the characteristics of a parent or relative



My family **pulled together** when my father was unwell.

pull together

work as a group to deal with a difficult situation



Will and Joe are identical twins. It's almost impossible to **tell** them **apart**.

tell apart

recognize the difference



Whenever his children stay out late, Carlo **waits up** until they get home.

wait up

wait for someone to get home before going to bed



Olly's dog **ran away** last week while they were at the park.

run away

escape



After a few days, Olly's dog **came back** all by herself.

come back

return



Aa

## 2.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Olly's dog ran away last week while they were at the park.

My family pulled together when my father was unwell.

My mother looks after my children while I'm at work.

I let the cat in when it started to rain.

Aa

## 2.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

My mother looks after my children while I'm at work.



My mother looks over my children while I'm at work.



① After a few days, Olly's dog came back all by herself.



After a few days, Olly's dog came under all by herself.



② Jasmine takes over her mother. They're very similar people.



Jasmine takes after her mother. They're very similar people.



③ I let the cat around every morning after I've woken up.



I let the cat out every morning after I've woken up.



④ Albert's parents named him after his great-grandfather.



Albert's parents named him behind his great-grandfather.



⑤ After traveling for a few years, Bill settled up and bought a house.



After traveling for a few years, Bill settled down and bought a house.



⑥ Colin lives on his son in a house at the edge of town.



Colin lives with his son in a house at the edge of town.



## 2.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL

Olly's dog ran away last week while they were at the park.

- ① Lisa puts her rabbit \_\_\_\_\_ its cage each evening before bed.
- ② Will and Joe are identical twins. It's almost impossible to tell them \_\_\_\_\_.
- ③ After traveling for a few years, Bill settled \_\_\_\_\_ and bought a house next door to his parents.
- ④ Liam gets \_\_\_\_\_ very well with his elder sister. They're always laughing together.
- ⑤ Fiona's cat doesn't like strangers, but he's warming \_\_\_\_\_ Dan.
- ⑥ Jenny's grown \_\_\_\_\_ of her old toys, she prefers playing video games now.

to      down      ~~away~~      on      apart      out      in



## 2.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES BELOW THE IMAGES



Sam wants to be a pilot when he  
grows up.



③ Jasmine \_\_\_\_\_ her mother.  
They're very similar people.



① Will and Joe are identical twins. It's almost  
impossible to \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_.



④ I \_\_\_\_\_ the cat \_\_\_\_\_ every morning  
after I've woken up.



② Lisa \_\_\_\_\_ her rabbit \_\_\_\_\_ its  
cage each evening before bed.



⑤ Jenny's \_\_\_\_\_ her old toys, she  
prefers playing video games now.

# 03 Relationships

## 3.1 FRIENDSHIPS

Our shared interest in music has really **brought us together**.

bring together  
create a close relationship



Ken **stuck by** Cath when her restaurant went bankrupt.

stick by  
continue to support someone who is in a difficult situation



I've really **gone off** Paul since I saw him at the party. He behaved very badly.

go off  
like something or someone less



Misha **stood by** Colin when he decided to quit college.

stand by  
support or defend someone when other people don't



## 3.2 ROMANTIC RELATIONSHIPS

Jack and Ula really **care for** each other. They've been together for 50 years.

care for  
love someone or like them very much



I think Pierre has **fallen for** Clara. Have you seen how he looks at her?

fall for  
start loving someone, fall in love



Sonia is trying to **win Claude back** because she's still in love with him.

win back  
persuade someone to start having a romantic relationship with you again



My brother **set me up** with a woman who works at his office.

set up  
arrange a date for someone else



Luisa has **finished with** Ben. He's very upset.

finish with (UK)  
end a relationship with someone



They started **going out with** each other when they were at school.

go out (with)  
have a romantic relationship with someone





**See also:**

break up 15, 21, 29, 38   care for 32   fall for 41   go off 8, 27, 30, 35  
go out 5, 27, 54   set up 12, 53   take out 14, 21, 28

After we left school, my friends and I **drifted apart**. I became more interested in my career than music.

**drift apart**  
*slowly become less close*



My best friends and I have **stuck together** since high school.

**stick together**  
*stay together and support each other*



Although I haven't seen Zaira for many years, I always **hear from** her on my birthday.

**hear from**  
*receive news from*



Bernadette **confided in** Martha that she was in love with Pavel.

**confide in**  
*share a secret with someone you trust*



Katia and I dated for a few weeks, but our relationship **fizzled out**.

**fizzle out**  
*lose energy over a period of time, slowly come to an end*



For our first date, Phil **took me out** to an expensive restaurant.

**take out**  
*take someone on a date*



Robin **asked** Helen **out** yesterday. They're going to the movies together.

**ask out**  
*invite someone to go on a date with you*



After a huge argument, Maria and Pablo decided to **break up**.

**break up (with)**  
*end a romantic relationship*









Carlos and Mia separated a few months ago, but they recently **got back together**.

**get back together**  
*restart a romantic relationship*





### 3.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A  Robin asked Helen out yesterday. They're going to the movies together. ☐
- B  I think Pierre has fallen for Clara. Have you seen how he looks at her? ☐
- C  Our shared interest in music has really brought us together. ☒ 1
- D  Carlos and Mia separated a few months ago, but they recently got back together. ☐
- E  After a huge argument, Maria and Pablo decided to break up. ☐
- F  Although I haven't seen Zaira for many years, I always hear from her on my birthday. ☐

Aa

### 3.4 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

- After a huge argument, Maria and Pablo decided up to break up.
- 1 My brother me up set with a woman who works at his office.
- 2 Jack and Ula for care really each other. They've been together for 50 years.
- 3 They started with going out each other when they were at school.
- 4 Misha by stood Colin when he decided to quit college.



Aa

## 3.5 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

- |   |                                     |                |
|---|-------------------------------------|----------------|
| 1 | start loving someone, fall in love  | fizzle out     |
| 2 | like something or someone less      | drift apart    |
| 3 | create a close relationship         | fall for       |
| 4 | slowly come to an end               | finish with    |
| 5 | arrange a date for someone else     | bring together |
| 6 | slowly become less close            | care for       |
| 7 | end a relationship with someone     | go off         |
|   | love someone or like them very much | set up         |

Aa

## 3.6 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING PHRASAL VERBS



Katia and I dated for a few weeks,  
but our relationship fizzled out.



1 My best friends and I have \_\_\_\_\_  
since high school.



2 For our first date, Phil \_\_\_\_\_ me \_\_\_\_\_  
to an expensive restaurant.



3 Bernadette \_\_\_\_\_ Martha  
that she was in love with Pavel.



4 Luisa has \_\_\_\_\_ Ben.  
He's very upset.



5 Ken \_\_\_\_\_ Cath when her  
restaurant went bankrupt.

# 04 Visiting people

## 4.1 VISITING PEOPLE

I **popped in** to see Brian on Saturday morning.

pop in (UK)

visit someone at their home (informal)



We chatted for hours, and he suggested I **stick around** for dinner.

stick around

stay somewhere longer than planned



Angelo **turned up** at my house at 6am. I was still in bed!

turn up

arrive (often unexpectedly)



After chatting on the doorstep for a moment, Malik **invited me in**.

invite in(to)

ask someone to enter your house



On our way home from the beach, we **called in** to see Grandma.

call in (UK)

visit someone at their home (often on your way elsewhere)



Following the interview, the secretary **showed Connor out**.

show out

take someone to the door as they leave



My new neighbors, Kaito and Leiko, **had me over** for dinner last night.

have over

have people as guests at your home



They **showed me around** their beautiful home.

show around

give someone a tour



It looks like Kia has **invited** everyone she knows **along to** the party.

invite along (to)

ask someone to go somewhere with you



See also:  
call in 22, 50 come in 56  
turn up 1, 27

While you're in town, try to **swing by**.  
It would be good to see you.

swing by  
visit someone's house on your  
way somewhere else



My father **came into** the house  
and took off his coat.

come in(to)  
enter a place



Yesterday afternoon, Liam **dropped in**  
for a cup of coffee and a chat.

drop in  
visit someone at their  
home (informal)



On her way home from the gym, Miriam  
**stopped off** at the supermarket to get  
something for dinner.

stop off  
stop during a journey to do something



While everyone was in the garden, I found  
Klaus **snooping around** the kitchen.

snoop around  
secretly look for something



## 4.2 A PARTY INVITATION

Dear Mason and Emily,

We'd like to invite you over for a  
barbecue to celebrate Beth's birthday on  
Saturday. Feel free to come over any  
time after 2pm, and please bring the  
kids along, too!

Love, Omar and Beth  
P.S. You are all welcome to stay over  
if you like!

We'd like to **invite you over** for a barbecue  
to celebrate Beth's birthday.

invite over  
invite someone to your home



Omar told us to **come over**  
any time after 2pm.

come over  
visit someone (at their home)



Mason and Emily **brought** the kids **along**  
to the barbecue.

bring along  
bring someone or something with you



We ended up **staying over** at Beth  
and Omar's house.

stay over  
stay at someone's house overnight





### 4.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR



come into ☒  
pop in ☐



1 show around ☐  
have over ☐



2 invite along ☐  
turn up ☐



3 show out ☐  
stop off ☐



4 snoop around ☐  
swing by ☐



5 drop in ☐  
stay over ☐

## Aa

### 4.4 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

I popped in to see Brian on Saturday morning.

I called Brian. ☐

I visited Brian at his home. ☒

I invited Brian to my home. ☐

3 Mason and Emily brought the kids along.

They took their kids away. ☐

They left their kids behind. ☐

They brought their kids with them. ☐

1 Angelo turned up at my house at 6am.

He arrived at 6am. ☐

He left at 6am. ☐

He fell asleep at 6am. ☐

4 We'd like to invite you over for a barbecue.

We'd like you to come to our home. ☐

We'd like you to call us. ☐

We'd like you to host a barbecue. ☐

2 They showed me around their beautiful home.

They asked me to leave. ☐

They asked me to come in. ☐

They gave me a tour. ☐

5 Liam dropped in for a cup of coffee and a chat.

He dropped coffee on himself. ☐

He visited me at my home. ☐

He took me out for coffee. ☐



Aa

## 4.5 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- Following the interview,
- 1 On her way home from the gym,
- 2 My father came into the house
- 3 Omar told us to come over
- 4 After chatting on the doorstep,
- 5 We ended up staying over
- 6 While everyone was in the garden,
- and took off his coat.
- I found Klaus snooping around inside.
- the secretary showed Connor out.
- at Beth and Omar's house.
- Miriam stopped off at the supermarket.
- Malik invited me in.
- any time after 2pm.

Aa

## 4.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Yesterday afternoon, Liam **dropped out** for a cup of coffee and a chat.

*Yesterday afternoon, Liam dropped in for a cup of coffee and a chat.*



- 1 My new neighbors, Kaito and Leiko, **had** me **under** for dinner last night.



- 2 We chatted for hours, and he suggested I **stick up** for dinner.



- 3 On our way home from the beach, we **called out** to see Grandma.



- 4 Omar told us to **come above** any time after 2pm.



- 5 While you're in town, try to **swing off**. It would be good to see you.



# 05 Socializing

## 5.1 SOCIALIZING

Katie asked Lisa if she wanted to **come out** to play.

**come out**  
go somewhere with someone



Chris spends most weekends **hanging out** with his friends.

**hang out (with)**  
spend time at a certain place  
with your friends (informal)



Vincent and Maya decided to **stay in**. They ordered some pizza and watched a movie.

**stay in**  
remain at home



Once a year, my school friends and I go out for a meal together to **catch up**.

**catch up (with)**  
talk to friends who you  
have not talked to recently



As I was leaving for the art exhibition, I asked Joe if he wanted to **come along**.

**come along (with)**  
accompany someone, go  
somewhere with someone



The carnival was amazing. We **stayed out** until dawn.

**stay out**  
remain away from home until late



## 5.2 LEAVING

Joe suddenly **took off** without saying where he was going.

**take off**  
leave (often unexpectedly)



We **headed off to** the beach early because we wanted to avoid the crowds.

**head off (to)**  
leave, begin a journey



The movie was terrible, so we **slipped out** halfway through.

**slip out**  
leave without telling people



Neil was **turned away from** the nightclub because he was wearing casual clothes.

**turn away (from)**  
refuse to let someone enter



See also: come along 31, 52   come out 12, 41   get together 53  
go out 3, 27, 54   hang out 28   head off (to) 8   slip out 51  
take off 6, 9, 22, 55   turn away 19

Lots of guests were **milling around**, waiting for Raj to make his speech.

**mill around**

slowly move around a room or space (often waiting for something)



Fleur and Clare were getting ready to **go out** for the evening.

**go out**

go somewhere with someone, socialize with friends



I was glad to see Marvin at the party. He always manages to **liven things up**.

**liven up**

make something more exciting



Amara let her little sister **tag along** when she went to the ice rink with her friends.

**tag along**

go somewhere with someone (often without an invitation)



Our local hotel has a large room that it **hires out** for parties.

**hire out (UK)**

allow someone to use something in exchange for money



Ella likes to **get together** with her friends at the ice cream parlor on Friday evenings.

**get together**

meet and spend time with friends



Charlie **stormed out of** the store when the manager refused to give him a refund.

**storm out (of)**

leave somewhere because you are angry



Paul had to **shoot off** at the end of the meeting to catch his train home.

**shoot off (UK)**

leave quickly (informal)



I hate to **tear you away**, but we're going to miss the last train.

**tear away (from)**

make someone leave a place even though they want to stay



Nadiya had to **dash off** to pick up the kids from school.

**dash off (UK)**

leave quickly (informal)





## 5.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Chris spends most weekends hanging ~~up on~~ / ~~out with~~ / ~~in on~~ his friends.

1



Amara let her little sister tag ~~along~~ / ~~about~~ / ~~above~~ when she went to the ice rink.

2



Ella likes to get ~~under~~ / ~~together~~ / ~~on~~ with her friends at the ice cream parlor.

3



I hate to tear you ~~out~~ / ~~away~~ / ~~up~~, but we're going to miss the last train.

4



Katie asked Lisa if she wanted to come ~~about~~ / ~~on~~ / ~~out~~ to play.

5



Joe suddenly took ~~off~~ / ~~up~~ / ~~in~~ without saying where he was going.

## 5.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL TO CREATE PHRASAL VERBS

Neil was  the nightclub because he was wearing casual clothes.

1

Charlie  the store when the manager refused to give him a refund.

2

As I was leaving for the art exhibition, I asked Joe if he wanted to .

3

Lots of guests were  waiting for Raj to make his speech.

4

Vincent and Maya decided to . They ordered pizza and watched a movie.

5

We  the beach early because we wanted to avoid the crowds.

6

Once a year, my school friends and I go out for a meal together to .

along

up

~~away from~~

out of

around

off to

in





## 5.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS



1



2



3



4



liven up

stay out

shoot off

catch up

mill around

Aa

## 5.6 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

The movie was terrible, so we slipped out halfway through.

off

to

dash

pick

1 Nadiya had to \_\_\_\_\_ up the kids from school.

stayed

We

until

out

2 The carnival was amazing. \_\_\_\_\_ dawn.

to

ready

out

go

3 Fleur and Clare were getting \_\_\_\_\_ for the evening.

it

out

hires

for

4 Our local hotel has a large room that \_\_\_\_\_ parties.

# 06 Clothing

## 6.1 CLOTHING

Angelica helped her son to **button up** his shirt as he got ready for school.

**button up**  
*fasten the buttons on a piece of clothing*



When Tom realized he was late, he **threw on** a jacket and tie, and ran for the bus.

**throw on**  
*put a piece of clothing on quickly*



As Hasan was running across the school yard, one of his shoes **came off**.

**come off**  
*fall off by mistake*



All the children at the party had **dressed up** as dinosaurs.

**dress up (as)**  
*wear a costume to look like something*



I hope this juice stain **comes out** when I wash my shirt.

**come out (of)**  
*be washed clean (about a stain)*



Gemma's shoes **go** really well **with** that dress.

**go with**  
*look good with another piece of clothing*



Arnie's so proud of his new jacket. He's been **showing it off** to everyone.

**show off (to)**  
*show people something you are proud of*



Mirek **did up** his coat to keep out the icy breeze.

**do up**  
*fasten a piece of clothing*



Carly's shoes are too big for her, but she'll **grow into** them.

**grow into**  
*become big enough to wear an item of clothing*



Gio's **grown out of** his sweater, so he's going to give it to his little brother.

**grow out of**  
*become too big for an item of clothing*



See also: come off 26, 52 come out (of) 52 cover up 41  
do up 52 grow out of 2 hang up 38 let out 2 put on 27, 41, 55  
take in 51, 55 take off 5, 9, 22, 55

This dress is a bit too big. We'll need to **take it in** a little.

take in  
make a piece of clothing smaller



The jacket is too tight. We need to **let it out** a bit.

let out  
make a piece of clothing bigger



Kelly stopped to **tie up** one of her shoe laces.

tie up  
fasten (usually your shoe laces)



It was very hot in the lecture theater, so Mario **took off** his sweater.

take off  
remove (a piece of clothing)



Alex **put on** her prettiest dress to go out for her wedding anniversary.

put on  
wear a piece of clothing



Make sure you **wrap up** before heading out into that cold weather.

wrap up  
wear certain clothes to keep you warm



Maurice **hung up** his coat as he walked in.

hang up  
place a piece of clothing on a hook or hanger



Zane **folded up** his clothes and put them in the wardrobe.

fold up  
make a piece of clothing smaller by folding it neatly



The sun is really strong today, so make sure you **cover up**.

cover up  
protect your skin with clothing



Marlon **zipped up** his leather jacket and walked toward the door.

zip up  
fasten the zipper on a piece of clothing



Aa

## 6.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Angelica helped her son to button up his shirt as he got ready for school.

1



As Hasan was running across the school yard, one of his shoes came off.

2



All the children at the party had dressed up as dinosaurs.

3



I hope this juice stain comes out when I wash my shirt.

4



Maurice hung up his coat as he walked in.

Aa

## 6.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

I hope this juice stain comes out when I wash my shirt.



I hope this juice stain comes in when I wash my shirt.



1 Marlon zipped up his leather jacket and walked toward the door.



Marlon zipped down his leather jacket and walked toward the door.



2 Gemma's shoes go really well about that dress.



Gemma's shoes go really well with that dress.



3 Arnie's so proud of his new jacket. He's been showing it on over everyone.



Arnie's so proud of his new jacket. He's been showing it off to everyone.



4 Zane folded up his clothes and put them in the wardrobe.



Zane folded away his clothes and put them in the wardrobe.







## 6.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A It was very hot in the lecture theater, so Mario took off his sweater. ☐
- B The jacket is too tight. We need to let it out a bit. ☐
- C All the children at the party had dressed up as dinosaurs. ☒ 1
- D This dress is a bit too big. We'll need to take it in a little. ☐
- E Make sure you wrap up before heading out into that cold weather. ☐
- F When Tom realized he was late, he threw on a jacket and tie, and ran for the bus. ☐
- G Angelica helped her son to button up his shirt as he got ready for school. ☐

## Aa

## 6.5 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING PHRASAL VERBS



Carly's shoes are too big for her, but she'll grow into them.



- 1 Mirek \_\_\_\_\_ his coat to keep out the icy breeze.



- 2 Kelly stopped to \_\_\_\_\_ one of her shoe laces.



- 3 The sun is really strong today, so make sure you \_\_\_\_\_.



- 4 Gio's \_\_\_\_\_ his sweater, so he's going to give it to his little brother.



- 5 Alex \_\_\_\_\_ her prettiest dress to go out for her wedding anniversary.

# 07 Before and after

## 7.1 CAUSE AND EFFECT

Heavy traffic has **impacted** badly on the city's air quality.

**impact on**  
have a strong effect on something



The heavy rain **resulted in** floods throughout the city.

**result in**  
cause something to happen



Scientists think that an asteroid colliding with Earth caused the dinosaurs to **die out**.

**die out**  
disappear, become extinct



Due to her injury, Colleen had to **face up to** the fact that she couldn't play in the match.

**face up to**  
accept and deal with a bad situation



The discovery of some ancient ruins has **led to** an increase in tourism.

**lead to**  
cause something to happen



The invention of the computer **brought about** the end of the typewriter.

**bring about**  
cause something to happen



## 7.2 MAKING COMPARISONS

Old cell phones can't **compete with** today's smartphones.

**compete with**  
be as good as something else



To get into college, you'll need to **improve on** last year's results.

**improve on**  
do something better than before



Sanjay got 100% on his exam. He more than **measured up to** his parents' expectations.

**measure up (to)**  
be as good as people had hoped



The new action movie really **lived up to** the crowd's expectations.

**live up to**  
be as good as people had hoped



## 7.3 MATCH UP THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES THAT MEAN THE SAME THING

The heavy rain resulted in floods throughout the city.

Old cell phones aren't as good as today's smartphones.

1 Heavy traffic has impacted badly on the city's air quality.

The heavy rain caused floods throughout the city.

2 Old cell phones can't compete with today's smartphones.

Due to her injury, Colleen had to accept the fact that she couldn't play in the match.

3 Due to her injury, Colleen had to face up to the fact that she couldn't play in the match.

To get into college, you'll need to get better results than you got last year.

4 To get into college, you'll need to improve on last year's results.

Heavy traffic has had a strong effect on the city's air quality.



## 7.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



Scientists think that an asteroid colliding with Earth caused the dinosaurs to die out.

1



Sanjay got 100% on his exam. He more than \_\_\_\_\_ his parents' expectations.

2



The new action movie really \_\_\_\_\_ the crowd's expectations.

3



The discovery of some ancient ruins has \_\_\_\_\_ an increase in tourism.

4



The invention of the computer \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the typewriter.

5



The heavy rain \_\_\_\_\_ floods throughout the city.

# 08 Everyday life

## 8.1 DAILY ROUTINE

My alarm **goes off** at 7am every morning during the week.

go off  
begin ringing (about an alarm clock)



Orla went to the bathroom to **freshen up** before going out.

freshen up  
make yourself look clean and tidy



I usually **head off to** work at 8 in the morning.

head off (to)  
leave, begin a journey



Kieran **woke up** in the middle of the night when he heard a noise outside.

wake up  
stop sleeping, become alert



In the evening, I often don't **get in** until after 7pm.

get in  
arrive home



Nico usually **gets up** at about 10am on Saturdays.

get up  
get out of bed



## 8.4 PHRASAL VERBS ABOUT SLEEP

I tried to wake Mia when I saw she had **dozed off** at her desk.

doze off  
fall asleep, often during the day



On Sunday mornings, I sometimes **sleep in** as late as 11am.

sleep in  
sleep for a longer time than usual



Quite a few people **nodded off** during the speech.

nod off  
fall asleep (without meaning to)



Hanif **slept through** his alarm again. He's going to be late for work.

sleep through  
not wake up when your alarm rings





See also:

drop off 9 get in 9, 53 get up 53

go off 3, 27, 30, 35 head off (to) 5

## 8.2 RELAXING

When Noel got home from work, he **sat down** and read a book.

sit down

take a sitting position



Sara was feeling tired, so she **lay down** on the couch and tried to get some rest.

lie down

take a lying position



Alfred spent the afternoon **pottering about** in the garden.

potter about

do small tasks in a relaxed way



## 8.3 TASKS

Once the guests had left, Marco **set about** doing the dishes.

set about (UK)

begin doing something (with energy or enthusiasm)



After a short break, Ramone **got on with** cleaning the bathroom.

get on with

concentrate on doing something (usually after a break)



Martina **stayed up** late revising for her exam the following morning.

stay up

go to bed later than usual



Uma is still **sleeping off** the effects of the anesthetic. She'll be able to see you soon.

sleep off

sleep to allow you to recover from the effects of a drug



I'm exhausted. I know it's only half past eight, but I'm going to have to **turn in**.

turn in

go to bed



Bradley is **sleeping over** at his cousin's house tonight. He's so excited about it.

sleep over

sleep at someone else's house (usually about children)



After a long day at the office, Andrew **dropped off** in front of the TV.

drop off

fall asleep



Aa

## 8.5 MATCH THE PHRASAL VERBS TO THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

	drop off	do small tasks in a relaxed way
1	sleep through	make yourself look clean and tidy
2	turn in	fall asleep
3	stay up	get out of bed
4	lie down	not wake up when your alarm rings
5	potter about	go to bed
6	freshen up	go to bed later than usual
7	get up	take a lying position



## 8.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR

stay up ☒ doze off ☐

1 sleep over ☐ set about ☐

2 turn in ☐ sleep in ☐

3 freshen up ☐ get in ☐

4 get up ☐ nod off ☐

5 head off ☐ go off ☐

Aa

## 8.7 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

fall asleep (without meaning to)

nod off

3 fall asleep, often during the day



1 stop sleeping, become alert



4 take a sitting position



2 leave, begin a journey



5 begin doing something (with energy or enthusiasm)



wake up

sit down

doze off

set about

~~nod off~~

head off (to)

Aa

## 8.8 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

get

don't

in

In the evening, I often don't get in until after 7pm.

on

got

with

1 After a short break, Ramone \_\_\_\_\_ cleaning the bathroom.

up

late

stayed

2 Martina \_\_\_\_\_ studying for her exam the following morning.

dozed

at

off

3 I tried to wake Mia when I saw she had \_\_\_\_\_ her desk.

off

nodded

during

4 Quite a few people \_\_\_\_\_ the speech.

# 09 Transportation

## 9.1 VEHICLES

Christina's motorcycle **broke down** while she was traveling through the desert.

break down  
stop working



Clive tried to restart the motorboat's engine after it **cut out** without any warning.

cut out  
suddenly stop working



Angelo left his house and **got into** the taxi.

get in(to)  
enter (a car or taxi)



As the movie star **got out of** the limousine, photographers surrounded him.

get out (of)  
exit (a car or taxi)



George and Yolanda **got on** the train to Paris.

get on  
enter (public transportation)



Gina **got off** the bus when it arrived at her stop.

get off  
exit (public transportation)



## 9.2 DRIVING

George checked the road for other vehicles before **driving off**.

drive off  
drive away, leave



Tanya **turned off** the main road and drove along the track to the beach.

turn off  
leave a road and drive onto a different one



Jen **turned back** when she realized that she had forgotten her phone.

turn back  
return in the direction you have just come from



When you reach the castle, **turn onto** the highway and head west.

turn onto  
join a road from a different one





See also: break down 46, 50 cut out 37 drop off 8 get in 8, 53  
get off 22 get on 2, 15 get out 53, 56 pick up 10, 11, 28, 31, 38  
pull over 13 pull up 28 take off 5, 6, 22, 55 turn off 27

Kamal **dropped** me **off** at the train station on his way to work.

drop off  
take a person somewhere in a car and leave them there



Sally **picked** her friends **up** outside the movie theater at 9pm.

pick up  
go to collect someone (usually in a car)



You should always **slow down** when you drive past a school.

slow down  
go more slowly



The train left the station slowly, before **speeding up** as it headed to the coast.

speed up  
go more quickly



The helicopter **took off** from the top of the skyscraper.

take off  
begin to fly



The plane **touched down** in Dubai at 9pm in the evening.

touch down  
land



We **pulled in** at a small roadside café, where we could have some breakfast.

pull in(to)  
stop and park somewhere



I **pulled up** by the train station to let my daughter out.

pull up  
stop driving (often for a short time)



Marion didn't notice the motorcycle as she **pulled out of** the junction.

pull out (of)  
move from one road to another



I got lost driving to your house. I had to **pull over** and ask for directions.

pull over  
drive to the side of the road and stop



Aa

## 9.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The helicopter took off from the top of the skyscraper.

1



George checked the road for other vehicles before driving off.

2



Gina got off the bus when it arrived at her stop.

3



I got lost driving to your house. I had to pull over and ask for directions.

4



The train left the station slowly, before speeding up as it headed to the coast.

5



Tanya turned off the main road and drove along the track to the beach.

Aa

## 9.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Gina got ~~up~~ / ~~off~~ / ~~through~~ the bus when it arrived at her stop.

1 Jen turned ~~down~~ / ~~back~~ / ~~up~~ when she realized that she had forgotten her phone.

2 I pulled ~~up~~ / ~~down~~ / ~~out~~ by the train station to let my daughter out.

3 Sally picked her friends ~~on~~ / ~~in~~ / ~~up~~ outside the movie theater at 9pm.

4 When you reach the castle, turn ~~over~~ / ~~onto~~ / ~~with~~ the highway and head west.

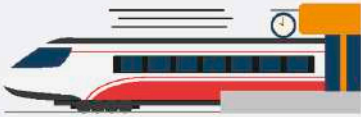
5 Jamie dropped me ~~off~~ / ~~on~~ / ~~in~~ at the train station on his way to work.

6 Angelo left his house and got ~~into~~ / ~~over~~ / ~~up~~ the taxi.

7 Marion didn't notice the motorcycle as she pulled ~~over on~~ / ~~out of~~ / ~~up to~~ the junction.



## 9.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



The train left the station slowly, before speeding up as it headed to the coast.



3 The plane \_\_\_\_\_ in Dubai at 9pm in the evening.



1 As the movie star \_\_\_\_\_ the limousine, photographers surrounded him.



4 You should always \_\_\_\_\_ when you drive past a school.



2 We \_\_\_\_\_ at a small roadside café, where we could have some breakfast.



5 Clive tried to restart the motorboat's engine after it \_\_\_\_\_ without any warning.

## Aa

## 9.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

begin to fly

=

t a k e o f f

1 enter (public transportation)

=

g o

2 go more slowly

=

s d

3 stop working

=

b d

4 drive away, leave

=

d o

5 join a road from a different one

=

t o

# 10 Shopping

## 10.1 SHOPPING

Once Ellie had found a scarf that she liked, she went to **check out**.

check out (US)  
pay



Ellie used her credit card to **pay for** the scarf.

pay for  
give money for something you are buying

Peter **bought up** all the pizzas in the store before his party.

buy up  
buy the entire supply  
of something



Aziz had been **looking around** the store for ages, but couldn't find a shirt he liked.

look around  
visit a place and see  
what is there



Joshua **crossed off** each item on the shopping list as he found it.

cross off  
put a line through a word in a list



Luis put the melon in his basket and **checked it off** his shopping list.

check off (US)  
put a check mark next to a word in a list



Kemal **knocked down** the price of jewelry by 15% to attract shoppers to his new store.

knock down  
reduce prices



I bought my new laptop online, and went to **pick it up** at my local store the following day.

pick up  
collect an item that you bought online



My favorite author has just **brought out** a new novel.

bring out  
put a new product on sale



Fans are **lining up** outside the bookstore to buy it.

line up  
wait in a line for something



**See also:**

check out **35, 50** pick up **9, 11, 28, 31, 38**

take back **16, 44, 55**

Ethan's going camping this weekend, so he's **stocking up on** insect repellent.

**stock up (on)**

*buy a lot of something in case you need it*



The mugs I bought online are broken. I'm going to **send** them **back**.

**send back**

*return an item to the seller by mail*



Before buying a new car, it's worth **shopping around**. You might find a bargain.

**shop around**

*visit several stores (or websites) to compare their products and prices*



Aisha decided to **splash out on** clothes for her summer vacation.

**splash out (on)**

*spend a lot of money without thinking too much about it*



I went to the market to buy some bread, but they had **sold out**.

**sell out (of)**

*sell all the available items*



Marta couldn't wait to **try out** her new games console.

**try out**

*try a new product to see what it is like*



Carla didn't like the sweater she'd bought, so she decided to **take it back**.

**take back**

*return a product to the store where you bought it*



Shoppers had already **snapped up** all the bargains at the sale by the time I'd arrived.

**snap up**

*buy something quickly, as soon as it becomes available*



The fitting rooms are over there if you'd like to **try it on**.

**try on**

*wear an item of clothing to see if it fits*



Aa

## 10.2 MATCH UP THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES THAT MEAN THE SAME THING

My favorite author has just brought out a new novel.

The mugs I bought online are broken. I'm going to return them to the seller by mail.

1 The fitting rooms are over there if you'd like to try it on.

My favorite author has just put a new novel on sale.

2 The mugs I bought online are broken. I'm going to send them back.

I went to the market to buy some bread, but all the bread had been sold.

3 I bought my new laptop online, and went to pick it up at my local store.

The fitting rooms are over there if you'd like to wear the clothes to see if they fit.

4 Before buying a new car, it's worth shopping around to find a bargain.

I bought my new laptop online, and went to collect it from my local store.

5 I went to the market to buy some bread, but they had sold out.

Before buying a new car, it's worth visiting several stores to compare prices.

Aa

## 10.3 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

mail an item back to the seller

send back



3 put a line through a word in a list



1 wait in a line for something



4 sell all the available items



2 buy a lot of something in case you need it



5 buy something quickly, as soon as it becomes available



cross off

snap up

line up

sell out (of)

~~send back~~

stock up (on)



## 10.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



Before buying a new car, it's worth shopping around. You might find a bargain.



1 Marta couldn't wait to \_\_\_\_\_ her new games console.



2 Kemal \_\_\_\_\_ the price of jewelry by 15% to attract shoppers to his new store.



3 Luis put the melon in his basket and \_\_\_\_\_ his shopping list.



4 Aisha decided to \_\_\_\_\_ clothes for her summer vacation.



5 Ellie used her credit card to \_\_\_\_\_ the scarf.

## Aa

## 10.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL TO CREATE PHRASAL VERBS

Peter bought up all the pizzas in the store before his party.

1 Aziz had been looking the store for ages, but couldn't find a shirt he liked.

2 Shoppers had already snapped all the bargains at the sale by the time I'd arrived.

3 Once Ellie had found a scarf that she liked, she went to check.

4 Carla didn't like the sweater she'd bought, so she decided to take it.

5 Joshua crossed each item on the shopping list as he found it.

up

back

~~up~~

off

out

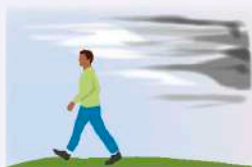
around

# 11 The weather

## 11.1 THE WEATHER

As dark storm clouds **rolled in** from the east, Arthur tried to get home before the rain started.

**roll in**  
(about bad weather)  
approach, come nearer



It looks like the weather's **clearing up**. We'll be able to start the game again soon.

**clear up**  
(about weather) improve,  
become less cloudy



The weather's been awful, but it's finally starting to **brighten up**.

**brighten up**  
become sunnier, less cloudy



Chris and Mel had to leave the beach when it started **bucketing down**.

**bucket down**  
rain very heavily (informal)



Once the storm had **calmed down**, Grace checked her house for damage.

**calm down**  
become less stormy or windy



Minutes after Ben had lit the grill, the sky **clouded over**. He hoped it wouldn't rain.

**cloud over**  
become more cloudy



Don't go outside yet, Pamela.  
It's **pouring down**!

**pour down**  
rain heavily



Oh, thanks Martin.  
I'll wait until it **eases off** a bit.

**ease off**  
become less strong or intense



See also:

brighten up 45 calm down 45 clear up 32, 50  
cool down 11 pick up 9, 10, 28, 31, 38 warm up 33

The wind's **picking up**. It's perfect weather for flying a kite.

pick up  
*increase, become stronger*



As soon as the storm had **blown over**, the hikers left the cave and continued walking.

blow over  
*(about a storm) move away*



Alice likes to sit on the balcony when the weather **cools down** in the evening.

cool down  
*become cooler*



After days of bad weather, the rain finally started to **let up**.

let up  
*become less severe*



People go ice-skating when the lake **freezes over** in the winter.

freeze over  
*completely freeze*



Ella stood in a bus shelter waiting for the wind to **die down**.

die down  
*(about a storm or wind) become calmer*



Today **started off** nicely, so we ate our breakfast on the terrace.

start off  
*begin*



By the end of May, the weather starts to **warm up** and the tourists start to arrive.

warm up  
*become warmer*



Aa

## 11.2 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

Don't go outside yet, Pamela. It's pouring down!



Don't go outside yet, Pamela. It's pouring up!



1 Today started off nicely, so we ate our breakfast on the terrace.



Today started on nicely, so we ate our breakfast on the terrace.



2 After days of bad weather, the rain finally started to let down.



After days of bad weather, the rain finally started to let up.



3 Chris and Mel had to leave the beach when it started bucketing under.



Chris and Mel had to leave the beach when it started bucketing down.



4 The weather's been awful, but it's finally starting to brighten up.



The weather's been awful, but it's finally starting to brighten off.



Aa

## 11.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The wind's picking up. It's perfect weather for flying a kite.

1



Ella stood in a bus shelter waiting for the wind to die down.

2



Minutes after Ben had lit the grill, the sky clouded over.

3



People go ice-skating when the lake freezes over in the winter.

4



Alice likes to sit on the balcony when the weather cools down in the evening.

## 11.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Minutes after Ben had lit the grill, the sky **clouded off**. He hoped it wouldn't rain.

Minutes after Ben had lit the grill, the sky clouded over. He hoped it wouldn't rain.

- ① As soon as the storm had **blown under**, the hikers left the cave and continued walking.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- ② As dark storm clouds **rolled out** from the east, Arthur tried to get home before the rain started.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- ③ It looks like the weather's **clearing off**. We'll be able to start the game again soon.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- ④ By the end of May, the weather starts to **warm around** and the tourists start to arrive.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- ⑤ Once the storm had **calmed up**, Grace checked her house for damage.  
\_\_\_\_\_



## 11.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A ☐B ☒C ☐D ☐E ☐F ☐G ☐H ☐

# 12 Technology

## 12.1 COMPUTER SYSTEMS

To access your account, **log in** with your username and password.

**log in(to)**

*enter an account or system*



As soon as Sherelle gets into work, she **boots up** her computer.

**boot up (UK)**

*(about a computer) start, turn on*



This is the third time that our system has **gone down** this morning!

**go down**

*(about a network) stop working*



Some criminals **hacked into** our computer system and stole the new designs.

**hack into**

*access a computer or network illegally*



Always make sure you **log out of** your account after using it, so hackers can't steal your data.

**log out (of)**

*leave an account or system*



You should **shut down** your computer at night to save electricity.

**shut down**

*(about a computer) turn off*



I **back up** all my photos in case my computer breaks. I keep them on an external hard drive.

**back up**

*make a copy of something*



Our company hired a technician to **set up** the new printer.

**set up**

*get something ready to use*



## 12.3 NEW PRODUCTS

My office has started **rolling out** some new software. People are very confused by it.

**roll out**

*(about a product) introduce*



The new phone model **came out** today. There was a long line outside the store.

**come out**

*(about a product) be released*





See also:

back up 44 come out 5, 6, 12, 41, 52

go down 32, 54 set up 3, 53

## 12.2 USING TECHNOLOGY

Pete **scrolled up to** the top of the document to find the company's address.

scroll up (to)

move toward the top (of a page)



I had to **scroll down to** the bottom of the page to find the information I was looking for.

scroll down (to)

move toward the bottom (of a page)



When Amy **zoomed in**, she noticed the red car in front of the restaurant.

zoom in

get a closer view of something



Amy **zoomed out** to look at the whole picture.

zoom out

get a more distant view of something



You have to **type in** your password to access the website.

type in

enter information using a keyboard



I **type out** my essays because it's quicker than writing them by hand.

type out

write a piece of text using a keyboard



If you **click on** the link at the bottom of the page, you will see the answers.

click on

select something on a computer screen



I **printed out** a copy of the contract for the clients to sign.

print out

make a paper copy of a text



The company has started **phasing in** new computers. They look great!

phase in

(about a product)  
introduce slowly



I agree. I'm so glad that they're **phasing out** these old models out.

phase out

(about a product) replace slowly





## 12.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A As soon as Sherelle gets into work, she boots up her computer. ☐
- B When Amy zoomed in, she noticed the red car in front of the restaurant. ☒
- C I had to scroll down to the bottom of the page to find the information I was looking for. ☐
- D I printed out a copy of the contract for the clients to sign. ☐
- E This is the third time that our system has gone down this morning! ☐
- F The new phone model came out today. There was a long line outside the store. ☐
- G To access your account, log in with your username and password. ☐

Aa

## 12.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Some criminals hacked into our computer system and stole the new designs.



My office has started rolling out some new software. People are very confused by it.



Pete scrolled up to the top of the document to find the company's address.



When Amy zoomed in, she noticed the red car in front of the restaurant.

Aa

## 12.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

This is the third time that our system has gone down this morning!

- ① You should \_\_\_\_\_ your computer at night to save electricity.
- ② \_\_\_\_\_ the link at the bottom of the page to see the answers.
- ③ I \_\_\_\_\_ all my photos in case my computer breaks.
- ④ Always make sure you \_\_\_\_\_ of your account after using it.
- ⑤ The company has started \_\_\_\_\_ new computers. They look great!

click on

log out

phasing in

~~gone down~~

shut down

back up

Aa

## 12.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

To access your account, **log off** with your username and password.

To access your account, log in with your username and password.



- ① I **type in** my essays because it's quicker than writing them by hand.



- ② I **printed up** a copy of the contract for the clients to sign.



- ③ Our company hired a technician to **put up** the new printer.



- ④ You have to **type down** your password to access the website.



- ⑤ Amy **zoomed up** to look at the whole picture at once.



# 13 Crime, the law, and politics

## 13.1 CRIME AND THE LAW

Gustav **broke out of** prison by digging a hole under the main wall.

break out (of)  
escape from a prison



Someone **broke into** my house and stole all my jewelry.

break in(to)  
enter a building to steal something



Phil had to go to the hospital after somebody **beat him up**.

beat up  
injure someone by hitting them repeatedly



The police ordered the criminal to **hand over** the stolen money.

hand over  
return something to its owner



The police are **cracking down on** illegal parking in the city.

crack down (on)  
become stricter about existing rules



Janice is leading a campaign to **stamp out** littering in the park.

stamp out  
make something bad or unpleasant stop happening



The police **cordoned off** the area where the crime had taken place.

cordon off  
use a barrier to stop people from entering an area



Dan **tipped off** the police about the location of the stolen artworks.

tip off  
give someone information anonymously



After robbing the store, the thieves **got away** in a stolen car.

get away  
escape



The police could **tell from** the tire tracks that the thieves had escaped by car.

tell from  
draw a conclusion from evidence





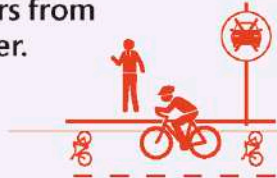
See also:

get away 35 pull over 9

turn to 21, 45, 50

The local government has **brought in** a new law banning cars from entering the city center.

bring in  
introduce a new law



**Watch out for** pickpockets when you're on the train!

watch out for  
be aware of potential danger



While I was driving home, the traffic police **pulled me over** for speeding.

pull over  
make a driver stop for doing something illegal



The detectives **tracked down** the thief using fingerprints on the door handle.

track down  
work to find something or someone



My brother **turned to** crime after he lost his job.

turn to  
start doing something different



## 13.2 POLITICS

Activists are **calling on** the government to protect the country's forests.

call on  
ask someone publicly to do something



Senators **voted on** the new law after a long debate.

vote on  
make a decision about a law using a vote



The protestors are **calling for** better public transportation in the town.

call for  
ask publicly for something to happen



One of my old school friends is **running for** mayor.

run for  
be a candidate for a political position



I'm definitely going to **vote for** her.

vote for  
support something or someone by using a vote



## 13.3 MATCH UP THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES THAT MEAN THE SAME THING

Someone broke into my house and stole all my jewelry.

The police stopped people from entering the area where the crime had taken place.

1 One of my old school friends is running for mayor.

Someone entered my house without permission and stole all my jewelry.

2 The police cordoned off the area where the crime had taken place.

The police are becoming stricter on illegal parking in the city.

3 After robbing the store, the thieves got away in a stolen car.

Be aware of pickpockets when you're on the train!

4 Watch out for pickpockets when you're on the train!

Activists are asking the government publicly to protect the country's forests.

5 The police are cracking down on illegal parking in the city.

One of my old school friends is a candidate for mayor.

6 Activists are calling on the government to protect the country's forests.

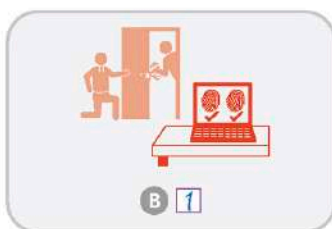
After robbing the store, the thieves escaped in a stolen car.



## 13.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B 1 ☐



C ☐



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

## Aa 13.5 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Gustav broke out of prison by digging a hole under the main wall. ☒

Gustav smashed out of prison by digging a hole under the main wall. ☐



1 The police ordered the criminal to foot over the stolen money. ☐

The police ordered the criminal to hand over the stolen money. ☐



2 Senators voted on the new law after a long debate. ☐

Senators voted about the new law after a long debate. ☐



3 Janice is leading a campaign to stamp out littering in the park. ☐

Janice is leading a campaign to stamp on littering in the park. ☐



4 While I was driving home, the traffic police grabbed me over for speeding. ☐

While I was driving home, the traffic police pulled me over for speeding. ☐



5 Dan tipped off the police about the location of the stolen artworks. ☐

Dan tipped up the police about the location of the stolen artworks. ☐

## Aa 13.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

draw a conclusion from evidence

=

*tell from*

1 support something or someone by using a vote

=

2 start doing something different

=

3 work to find something or someone

=

4 injure someone by hitting them repeatedly

=

5 introduce a new law

=

6 ask publicly for something to happen

=



# 14 Money

## 14.1 MONEY

Dan has owed me £200 for six months, but he's finally **paid up**.

**pay up**  
return (usually unwillingly) all the money you have borrowed



I've decided to **cut back on** spending by bringing my own lunch to work.

**cut back (on)**  
reduce the amount of money you spend



I **came into** a lot of money when my grandfather died.

**come into**  
receive suddenly; inherit



Sara has finally **coughed up** the money I lent her last year.

**cough up**  
give money you owe (reluctantly)



I lent Jenny \$20 yesterday and she **paid me back** today.

**pay back**  
return the money you have borrowed



Tommy had to **fork out** more than \$600 to get his car repaired.

**fork out (for)**  
spend a lot of money on something



Nura asked Craig's friends to **chip in** \$5 each toward his birthday present.

**chip in**  
each contribute money



More than a million dollars was **wiped off** the price of our company this morning.

**wipe off**  
reduce in value



Gary **lives off** the money that he inherited from his aunt. He does not need to work.

**live off**  
get enough money from somewhere to pay for all the things you need



I try to **live on** half my paycheck every month so I can save the rest.

**live on**  
have a limited amount of money to buy the things you need





**See also:**

add up **25, 41** come to **24** cut back **28** pay off **26**  
run into **26** take out **3, 21, 28** wipe off **21**

The cost of the new stadium has already **run into** the millions.

**run into**

*allow a debt or bill to increase to a certain amount*



Tara and Ali are **saving up** for a new house. They try to save \$300 each month.

**save up**

*save money (for something in particular)*



Try to pay your bills as soon as they arrive. They can soon **add up**.

**add up**

*accumulate, build up*



Patrick went to the bank to **pay in** some cash.

**pay in(to)**

*put money in a bank*



Pete went to the ATM to **take out** some cash.

**take out**

*withdraw money from a bank*



Nick doesn't earn much money, but it's enough to **get by**.

**get by**

*have just enough money to survive*



The food was excellent, but we were shocked when the bill **came to** more than \$200.

**come to**

*reach a certain amount*



Wayne paid for everyone's lunches yesterday, so we **settled up** with him today.

**settle up (with)**

*pay someone what you owe them*



Colin has **run up** some huge debts renovating his house.

**run up**

*allow a debt or bill to increase*



He doesn't know how he's going to **pay them off**.

**pay off**

*finish giving back the money you have borrowed*



## Aa 14.2 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

I lent Jenny \$20 yesterday and she paid me back today.

- Jenny threw away \$20. ☐
- Jenny returned \$20 to me. ☒
- Jenny stole \$20 from me. ☐

- ① More than a million dollars was wiped off the price of our company this morning.

- The company reduced in value. ☐
- The company rose in value. ☐
- The company shut down. ☐

- ② Tommy had to fork out more than \$600 to get his car repaired.

- Tommy had to spend a lot of money. ☐
- Tommy had to save a lot of money. ☐
- Tommy had to borrow money. ☐

- ③ I came into a lot of money when my grandfather died.

- I lost a lot of money. ☐
- I inherited a lot of money. ☐
- I gave away a lot of money. ☐

- ④ Patrick went to the bank to pay in some cash.

- Patrick took money from a bank. ☐
- Patrick put money into a bank. ☐
- Patrick robbed a bank. ☐

- ⑤ Wayne paid for everyone's lunches yesterday, so we settled up with him today.

- We took money from Wayne. ☐
- We shared money with Wayne. ☐
- We paid Wayne what we owed him. ☐

## Aa 14.3 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

have just enough money to survive

get by



- ① return all the money you have borrowed (usually unwillingly)



- ② reduce in value



- ③ allow a debt or bill to increase



- ④ each contribute money



- ⑤ have a limited amount of money to buy the things you need



- ⑥ save money (for something in particular)



pay up    ~~get by~~    live on    run up

chip in    save up    wipe off

## 14.4 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

He doesn't know how he's going to **pay** them **over**.

*He doesn't know how he's going to pay them off.*

- ① Sara has finally **coughed on** the money I lent her last year.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- ② I've decided to **cut down for** spending by bringing my own lunch to work.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- ③ The food was excellent, but we were shocked when the bill **went to** more than \$200.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- ④ The cost of the new stadium has already **run through** the millions.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- ⑤ Try to pay your bills as soon as they arrive. They can soon **add on**.  
\_\_\_\_\_



## 14.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND WRITE THE SENTENCES BELOW THE IMAGES



*Gary lives off the money  
that he inherited.*



① \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



② \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



③ \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



④ \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_



⑤ \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

# 15 Time

## 15.1 TIME

The journey **dragged on** for hours.  
The kids were so bored!

**drag on**

*continue for a long time (negative)*



Time's **getting on** now. Let's hurry home before it gets dark.

**get on (UK)**

*become late (about the time)*



We take the children to the park every afternoon to **break up** the day.

**break up**

*break (a day or period of time) into separate parts*



The doctor's busy at the moment, but I'll try to **fit** you **in** later today.

**fit in**

*make time for something*



Mikhail **dragged out** his speech for so long that some of the audience fell asleep.

**drag out**

*make something last too long (negative)*



As the years **went by**, I grew to love Phil's sense of humor.

**go by**

*pass (about time)*



The deadline for the project **crept up** on us.

**creep up (on)**

*happen slowly to someone without them noticing it*



I enjoy **whiling away** the hours reading novels and comic books.

**while away**

*pass the time in a relaxed way*



## 15.2 WAITING

Hi Sally! Can you **hang on** a minute while I grab my umbrella?

**hang on**

*wait for a short time (informal)*



The service here is terrible! It's **holding** everyone **up**.

**hold up**

*make someone or something late*





**See also:**

break up **3, 21, 29, 38** creep up on **51** fit in **15**  
get on **2, 9** go by **54** run out (of) **30** take up **31, 55**

Danny wasn't able to finish the exam because he **ran out of** time.

run out (of)  
have no more (time)



Cleaning the house **took up** all of Liam's weekend.

take up  
occupy, use up (someone's time)



Your session has **timed out**. Please log in again.

time out  
log someone out of a computer, server, or website because of inactivity



Commuting to and from work really **eats into** my time.

eat into  
take up too much (of someone's time)



**Hurry up**, Oliver! The train's going to leave soon!

hurry up  
move or do something more quickly



I can't believe how quickly winter's **come around** again!

come around  
happen again (about a regular event)



Our professor always **draws out** our lectures by answering lots of questions at the end.

draw out  
make something last longer than necessary



Quitting my job at the café has **freed up** more time for my studies.

free up  
make more time available



Chris was sitting in the café **waiting for** his girlfriend to arrive.

wait for  
stay somewhere or delay something until something happens



When the train was canceled, the passengers had to **wait around for** the next one.

wait around (for)  
do nothing until something happens



Winter's come around again so quickly!

Winter is over. ☐

Winter has started again. ☒

Winter is yet to begin. ☐

① Hurry up, Oliver! The train's going to leave soon!

Slow down, Oliver. ☐

Stop walking, Oliver. ☐

Move more quickly, Oliver. ☐

② Quitting my job has freed up time for my studies.

I have more time for my studies. ☐

I have less time for my studies. ☐

I have no time for my studies. ☐

③ As the years went by, I grew to love Phil.

I began to love Phil. ☐

I do not love Phil. ☐

I have always loved Phil. ☐

④ Our professor always draws out our lectures.

He keeps lectures short. ☐

He makes lectures last longer. ☐

He refuses to give lectures. ☐

⑤ I enjoy whiling away the hours reading.

I read very fast. ☐

I read for very little time. ☐

I like to pass the time by reading. ☐

⑥ He ran out of time and could not finish the exam.

He was given more time. ☐

He had no more time. ☐

He had some time left. ☐

⑦ Your session has timed out. Please log in again.

Your session has ended due to inactivity. ☐

Your session is still in progress. ☐

Your session has not begun. ☐



## 15.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR



free up ☒

free down ☐



① drag out ☐

drag in ☐



② hurry in ☐

hurry up ☐



③ wait out ☐

wait for ☐



④ break up ☐

break in ☐



⑤ while over ☐

while away ☐

## Aa 15.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

As the years went by, I grew to love Phil's sense of humor.



eats into

crept up on

~~went by~~

took up

dragged on

① The journey \_\_\_\_\_ for hours. The kids were so bored.



② Commuting to and from work really \_\_\_\_\_ my time.



③ Cleaning the house \_\_\_\_\_ all of Liam's weekend.



④ The deadline for the project \_\_\_\_\_ us.



## Aa 15.6 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

Passengers had to wait around for the next train.

wait

for

around

up

everyone

holding

① The service here is terrible! It's \_\_\_\_\_.

on

now

getting

② Time's \_\_\_\_\_ . Let's hurry home before it gets dark.

a

hang

on

③ Can you \_\_\_\_\_ minute while I grab my umbrella?

fit

in

you

④ The doctor's busy today, but I'll try to \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.

# 16 Past and future

## 16.1 FUTURE

The building project has just begun.  
Months of construction work **lie ahead**  
before it'll be finished.

lie ahead  
be in the future



Elly and George are **looking forward**  
**to** going to the beach later.

look forward to  
wait for something with excitement



All the streets were decorated in the  
weeks **leading up to** the festival.

lead up to  
happen in the period  
before an event



Colin is working hard because the  
deadline for his article is **coming up**.

come up  
approach, happen soon



Kira had dreamed of becoming a great  
actor, but her plans didn't **pan out**.

pan out  
develop, become successful



## 16.2 MEMORY

Being at the beach **stirs up** memories  
of vacations with my grandmother.

stir up  
make someone think about the past



Roland **looks back on** his college days  
with pleasure.

look back (on)  
remember, think about the past



Finding my old toys **brought back** happy  
memories of my childhood.

bring back  
make someone think about the past



## 16.3 CHANGE AND RESCHEDULING

The house was **turned into** a convenience  
store in the 1980s.

turn into  
become, transform into



We are planning to **turn it back into**  
a house and live there.

turn back into  
return to its original form





**See also:**

bring back 35   come up 36, 50, 52   go back 35, 54  
push back 43   take back 10, 44, 55

When I recognized Roshan, memories of our days in Delhi came **flooding back**.

**flood back**

*suddenly come into someone's mind  
(about memories or emotions)*



Peter **reminds** me **of** you when you were a little boy.

**remind of**

*make someone remember a person, place, or event from the past*



I like to listen to music and **think back to** my days as a musician in Paris.

**think back (to)**

*think about an event in the past*



This dress **takes** me **back to** my childhood in the 1960s.

**take back (to)**

*make someone think about the past*



Many of the buildings in my city **date back to** the 19th century.

**date back to**

*come into being at a particular time in the past*



The doctor's off this afternoon, so could we **bring** your appointment **forward to** 11 o'clock this morning?

**bring forward (to)**

*move to an earlier time*



Claude is unwell today. We'll have to **push** our meeting **back to** tomorrow.

**push back (to)**

*move an appointment to a later date, postpone*



In my country, the clocks **go forward** one hour in the spring.

**go forward**

*move forward*



The clocks **go back** one hour in the fall.

**go back**

*move backward*

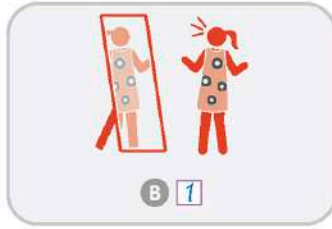




## 16.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☒ 1



C ☐



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

Aa

## 16.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

The house was turned ~~out~~ / **into** / ~~over~~ a convenience store in the 1980s.

- 1 In my country, the clocks go **forward** / ~~away~~ / ~~under~~ one hour in the spring.
- 2 The clocks go **back to** / ~~again in~~ / ~~back~~ one hour in the fall.
- 3 Elly and George are looking **on to** / ~~out of~~ / **forward to** going to the beach later.
- 4 Claude is unwell today. We'll have to push our meeting back ~~away~~ / **to** / ~~out~~ tomorrow.
- 5 Finding my old toys brought **back** / ~~over~~ / **in** happy memories of my childhood.
- 6 The building project has just begun. Months of construction work lie **ahead** / ~~under~~ / **above**.
- 7 We are planning to turn the store back **around** / ~~over~~ / **into** a house and live there.
- 8 All the streets were decorated in the weeks leading **up** / ~~down~~ / ~~over~~ to the festival.

## Aa 16.6 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| Being at the beach stirs up memories | my childhood in the 1960s.                 |
| 1 This dress takes me back to        | when you were a little boy.                |
| 2 Kira had dreamed of becoming a     | of vacations with my grandmother.          |
| 3 Peter reminds me of you            | a convenience store in the 1980s.          |
| 4 Many of the buildings in my city   | great actor, but her plans didn't pan out. |
| 5 The house was turned into          | date back to the 19th century.             |

## Aa 16.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Many of the buildings in my city **date back on** the 19th century.

Many of the buildings in my city date back to the 19th century.



- 1 The doctor's off tomorrow, so could we **bring** your appointment **forward on** today?



- 2 Colin is working hard because the deadline for his article is **coming down**.



- 3 Roland **looks out on** his college days with pleasure.



- 4 All the streets were decorated in the weeks **leading over to** the festival.



- 5 I like to listen to music and **think forward to** my days as a musician in Paris.



- 6 The building project has just begun. Months of construction work **lie before**.



# 17 Making plans

## 17.1 MAKING PLANS

Kwang had been planning to study medicine, but **ended up** studying French.

**end up**

*do something different to what you had originally planned*



The negotiating teams stayed up until after midnight **hammering out** a new treaty.

**hammer out**

*reach an agreement after much discussion*



I asked Sabrina if she wanted to go camping, but she **threw out** the idea.

**throw out**

*reject a suggestion or idea*



My dad wanted to buy a motorcycle for ages, but I never expected him to **go through with it**.

**go through with**

*do something you have planned to do (after some thought or discussion)*



We want to get married in summer, but we haven't **pinned down** a location yet.

**pin down**

*decide the details about something*



Giovanni forgot about the art project, but he managed to **throw** something **together**.

**throw together**

*do something without preparation*



## 17.2 CANCELING PLANS

Ed had promised to do a bungee jump with me, but **backed out** at the last minute.

**back out**

*not do something you had agreed to do*



Adi always manages to **wriggle out of** helping with the cleaning.

**wriggle out of**

*avoid doing something you should do (informal)*

Dexter was going to ask Becky out on a date, but he **chickened out**.

**chicken out**

*decide not to do something you had planned to do because you are afraid (informal)*





See also:  
end up 35 get out of 31  
throw out 39

You should **plan ahead** before setting off on a long car journey.

plan ahead  
*make plans before an event happens*



**Allow for** traffic delays when estimating how long it'll take.

allow for  
*take something into consideration before making a plan*

You need to **think ahead** and save some money for the future.

think ahead  
*think about the future and plan for it*



The two directors had several meetings to **firm up** the details of the new contract.

firm up  
*make something more definite*



We've been meaning to get a new kitchen for years, but we never **get around to** it.

get around to  
*find the time to do something*



**Look ahead** and picture what you want to be doing in five years' time.

look ahead  
*think about what might happen in the future*



The store **weaseled out of** giving us a refund by claiming we had broken the vase.

weasel out of  
*avoid doing something you had agreed to do in a sneaky way (informal)*



Seb said he'd help me paint the house, but he **went back on** his promise.

go back on  
*fail to keep a promise or agreement*



Cleo didn't want to go out, so she pretended to be sick to **get out of** it.

get out of  
*avoid doing something you had agreed to do*



## Aa 17.3 MATCH UP THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES THAT MEAN THE SAME THING

Seb said he'd help me paint the house, but he went back on his promise.

The two directors had several meetings to make the new contract more definite.

1 Allow for traffic delays when estimating how long the journey will take.

Seb said he'd help me paint the house, but he did not keep his promise.

2 We've been meaning to get a new kitchen for years, but we never get around to it.

I asked Sabrina if she wanted to go camping, but she rejected the idea.

3 Giovanni forgot about the art project, but he managed to throw something together.

We've been meaning to get a new kitchen for years, but haven't found the time for it.

4 The two directors had several meetings to firm up the details of the new contract.

Take traffic delays into consideration when estimating how long the journey will take.

5 I asked Sabrina if she wanted to go camping, but she threw out the idea.

The negotiating teams stayed up to discuss and reach an agreement on a new treaty.

6 The negotiating teams stayed up until after midnight hammering out a new treaty.

Giovanni forgot about the art project, but he managed to do it without preparation.

## Aa 17.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

We want to get married, but we haven't pinned down a location yet.



hammering out

1 They stayed up until after midnight \_\_\_\_\_ a new treaty.



think ahead

2 Cleo pretended to be sick to \_\_\_\_\_ going out.



~~pinned down~~

3 Dexter was going to ask Becky out, but he \_\_\_\_\_



get out of

4 You need to \_\_\_\_\_ and save money for the future.



chickened out

Aa

## 17.5 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING PHRASAL VERBS



Kwang had been planning to study medicine, but ended up studying French.



3 \_\_\_\_\_ and picture what you want to be doing in five years' time.



1 You should \_\_\_\_\_ before setting off on a long car journey.



4 The store \_\_\_\_\_ giving us a refund by claiming we had broken the vase.



2 Seb said he'd help me paint the house, but he \_\_\_\_\_ his promise.



5 Ed had promised to do a bungee jump with me, but \_\_\_\_\_ at the last minute.



## 17.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A My dad wanted to buy a motorcycle for ages, but I never expected him to go through with it. ☐
- B We want to get married in summer, but we haven't pinned down a location yet. ☐
- C I asked Sabrina if she wanted to go camping, but she threw out the idea. ☒ 1
- D We've been meaning to get a new kitchen for years, but we never get around to it. ☐
- E Kwang had been planning to study medicine, but ended up studying French. ☐
- F Seb said he'd help me paint the house, but he went back on his promise. ☐
- G Giovanni forgot about the art project, but he managed to throw something together. ☐



# 18 The senses

## 18.1 HEARING

**Listen up!** You're going to fail your exam unless you start working a bit harder.

listen up  
pay attention



Dayita **listened to** the radio while she ate her breakfast.

listen to  
pay attention to someone talking or something making a sound



Have you **heard about** the new gym in town? It's supposed to be great.

hear about  
receive information about something



Andy hid behind the curtain so he could **listen in on** Carmen and Simon's conversation.

listen in (on)  
secretly listen to someone



Marion asked her son to **listen out for** the doorbell while she was in the garden.

listen out for  
listen attentively to hear a noise you are expecting



Please **hear me out!** I don't want to be a lawyer. I want to be an actor!

hear out  
listen to someone without interrupting



## 18.2 SMELL AND TASTE

Alex's cookies **smelled of** cinnamon. I asked to try one.

smell of  
have the smell of something



That journalist's been **sniffing around** again trying to find out what's going on.

sniff around  
try to find information



Whatever Pablo has cooked is **stinking the whole house out.**

stink out  
cause somewhere to smell unpleasant (informal)



This soup is delicious! It **tastes of** tomato and basil.

taste of  
have the flavor of something





## 18.3 SIGHT

Robert has been **looking for** his glasses all afternoon. He can't find them anywhere.

look for  
*search for something*



The geologist **looked at** each of the rocks. They were unlike anything he'd seen before.

look at  
*examine something*



We all **looked on** in silence as the magician seemed to cut the person in half.

look on  
*watch something without taking part*



While you're in the national park, **look out for** bald eagles near the rivers and lakes.

look out for  
*pay attention to notice something*



The children **looked over** the wall, trying to see where the ball had landed.

look over  
*raise yourself to see past an obstacle*



The scary scene in the movie made everyone **look away**.

look away  
*turn your eyes away from something*



Sarah and Dionne **looked into** the well. There was no sign of the bottom.

look into  
*look at a hole, room, or hollow object to see what is inside*



Marcus **looked through** his telescope to see the moon.

look through  
*look at one side of something to see what is on the other side*



Vineeta's summer house has the perfect location. It **looks out over** a lake.

look out over  
*have a view of*



Fiona **spied on** her colleagues to steal their ideas.

spy on  
*secretly watch someone*



## Aa 18.4 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Fiona spied on her colleagues.

Fiona is a spy. ☐

Fiona secretly watched her colleagues. ☒

Fiona thinks her colleagues are spies. ☐

1 The soup tastes of tomato and basil.

The soup has only tomato and basil in it. ☐

The soup has a tomato and basil flavor. ☐

The soup is missing tomato and basil. ☐

2 Marcus looked through his telescope.

Marcus bought a telescope. ☐

Marcus saw a telescope. ☐

Marcus used his telescope. ☐

3 Robert looked for his glasses.

Robert wanted his glasses back. ☐

Robert searched for his glasses. ☐

Robert bought new glasses. ☐

4 Please hear me out!

Please listen to me! ☐

Please come outside! ☐

Please leave me alone! ☐



## 18.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS



look at



taste of



listen in on



sniff around



look through



listen out for



stink out

## Aa 18.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

watch something without taking part

= l o o k o n

1 try to find information about someone or something

= s \_ \_ \_ \_ a \_ \_ \_ \_

2 examine something

= l \_ \_ \_ \_ a \_ \_

3 have a view of

= l \_ \_ \_ \_ o \_ \_ \_ o \_ \_ \_

4 turn your eyes away from something

= l \_ \_ \_ \_ a \_ \_ \_ \_







Aa

## 18.7 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

- |  |                |
|--|----------------|
| raise yourself to see past an obstacle   | hear out       |
| 1 secretly listen to someone             | listen up      |
| 2 cause somewhere to smell unpleasant    | look over      |
| 3 pay attention to notice something      | stink out      |
| 4 receive information about something    | look out for   |
| 5 pay attention                          | look on        |
| 6 listen to someone without interrupting | hear about     |
| 7 watch something without taking part    | listen in (on) |

Aa

## 18.8 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

- The scary scene in the movie made everyone look away. 
- 1 Alex's cookies \_\_\_\_\_ cinnamon. I asked to try one. 
- 2 Have you \_\_\_\_\_ the new gym in town? It's supposed to be great. 
- 3 Dayita \_\_\_\_\_ the radio while she ate her breakfast. 
- 4 Fiona \_\_\_\_\_ her colleagues to steal their ideas. 
- 5 Sarah and Dionne \_\_\_\_\_ the well. There was no sign of the bottom. 

smelled of

spied on

~~look away~~

looked into

listened to

heard about

# 19 Movement and progress

## 19.1 MOVEMENT AND PROGRESS

Martin was exhausted, and began to **fall behind** the other runners.

**fall behind**

*move more slowly than the people around you*



The rain made it hard for the hikers to keep going, but they **pressed on**.

**press on**

*continue despite difficulties*



Tanya **turned away** as the nurse gave her the injection.

**turn away**

*turn your head or body so that you are no longer facing something*



The security guards told us to stop taking photos of the building and **move along**.

**move along**

*leave a certain place (usually said by someone in authority)*



As the train **went through** the mountain range, Ted took some photographs.

**go through**

*move through a room or space*



There was a loud knock at the door. Hassan **stood up** and went to answer it.

**stand up**

*rise from a seated position*



The saleswoman **came up to** Fabio and asked if he needed any help.

**come up to**

*approach someone, come close to someone*



As we **came down from** the summit, the weather became much worse.

**come down (from)**

*move toward the ground or bottom of something*



The monkey **climbed up** the tree with Kazuo's camera.

**climb up**

*move toward the top of something (often using your arms as well as legs)*



Kazuo got the monkey to **climb down** by offering it a banana.

**climb down**

*move toward the bottom of something (often using your arms as well as legs)*





See also:

climb down 44 fall behind 20 get down 46, 53  
go through 54 turn around 33 turn away 5

Terry **doubled back** when he realized he'd walked past the entrance to the gallery.

**double back**

turn around and go in the direction you just came from



When I heard someone calling my name, I **turned around**.

**turn around**

turn yourself so that you face the opposite direction



Clive **lifted** his daughter **up** so that she could see the deer.

**lift up**

raise someone or something



Doug **dropped back** to help one of the other hikers, who had injured himself.

**drop back**

start to move more slowly than others



Helen told her son to **get down from** the garden wall.

**get down (from)**

move to the ground or a lower position

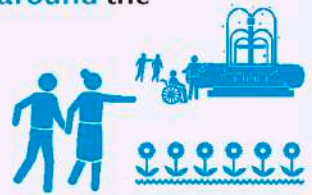


## 19.2 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "WALK"

The visitors **walked around** the palace gardens.

**walk around**

move around a place on foot



The explorers **walked into** the cave.

**walk in(to)**

enter a room, building, or enclosed space on foot



A line of tourists slowly **walked over** the ancient bridge.

**walk over**

move over an object on foot



While we were chatting, Mani **walked off** without saying where he was going.

**walk off**

leave on foot (often without an explanation)



Janine grabbed her coat and **walked out of** the room.

**walk out (of)**

leave a room, building, or enclosed space on foot





### 19.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A  While we were chatting, Mani walked off without saying where he was going. ☐
- B  Terry doubled back when he realized he'd walked past the entrance to the gallery. ☐
- C  There was a loud knock at the door. Hassan stood up and went to answer it. ☒ 1
- D  The rain made it hard for the hikers to keep going, but they pressed on. ☐
- E  The security guards told us to stop taking photos of the building and move along. ☐

Aa

### 19.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Janine grabbed her coat            | down by offering it a banana.              |
| 1 Kazuo got the monkey to climb    | into the cave.                             |
| 2 The explorers walked             | and walked out of the room.                |
| 3 Doug dropped back to help one of | so that she could see the deer.            |
| 4 As we came down from the summit, | the other hikers, who had injured himself. |
| 5 The saleswoman came up           | the weather became much worse.             |
| 6 Clive lifted his daughter up     | to Fabio and asked if he needed any help.  |

## Aa 19.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



A line of tourists slowly walked ~~around~~ / ~~over~~ / ~~through~~ the ancient bridge.



1 When I heard someone calling my name, I turned ~~about~~ / ~~around~~ / ~~off~~.



2 Martin was exhausted, and began to ~~fall~~ / ~~run~~ / ~~jump~~ behind the other runners.



3 Clive lifted his daughter ~~over~~ / ~~down~~ / ~~up~~ so that she could see the deer.



4 Janine grabbed her coat and walked ~~back~~ / ~~out~~ / ~~down~~ of the room.



5 Doug dropped ~~out~~ / ~~in~~ / ~~back~~ to help one of the other hikers, who had injured himself.

## Aa 19.6 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

the walked around

The visitors walked around the palace gardens.

away as turned

1 Tanya \_\_\_\_\_ the nurse gave her the injection.

climbed the up

2 The monkey \_\_\_\_\_ tree with Kazuo's camera.

get from down

3 Helen told her son to \_\_\_\_\_ the garden wall.

the through went

4 As the train \_\_\_\_\_ mountain range, Ted took some photographs.

# 20 Studying and research

## 20.1 STUDYING AND RESEARCH

I'm moving to Tokyo for a year. I need to **brush up on** my Japanese.

brush up on  
*practice, revise*



The library was full of students **swotting up on** English grammar.

swot up on (UK)  
*(informal) study a subject*



Fiona **worked through** the problems in her code to fix the issues.

work through  
*deal with a problem carefully and methodically*



Patsy's research **focuses on** space travel.

focus on  
*give attention to*



Nadia stayed up all night trying to **work out** the answer to the equation.

work out  
*solve a problem*



I kept making mistakes trying to answer the question, so decided to **start over**.

start over (US)  
*start something again*



Sam has **dived into** his new project. He spent all weekend working on it.

dive in(to)  
*start doing something with enthusiasm*



She's **looking into** how astronauts might travel to Mars one day.

look into  
*investigate, research, or find out about something*



## 20.2 MAKING A PRESENTATION

At the start of your presentation, **lay out** the main points you are going to discuss.

lay out  
*present or explain in a clear way*



After introducing your topic, you should then **move on to** presenting each of your arguments.

move on (to)  
*proceed to the next point*





**See also:**

fall behind **20** keep up with **33** look into **20**  
move on **45** work out **26, 33** work through **45**

Hi, Arjun. Do you know what  
"burdensome" means?



No, I don't. You'll have to  
**look it up** in a dictionary.

**look up**

*find information online or in a reference book*

The practical assessment and  
the written exam both **count**  
**toward** your final grade.

**count toward**  
*contribute toward*



Bill is trying to **cram in** as much studying  
as possible before the exam.

**cram in (UK)**

*fit a lot of something into a small  
space or a short period of time*



Emma was sick for most of the spring.  
She has **fallen behind** the other  
students in her year.

**fall behind**  
*not keep up with*



Even though Leo is the youngest in his  
class, he manages to **keep up**  
**with** the other children.

**keep up with**

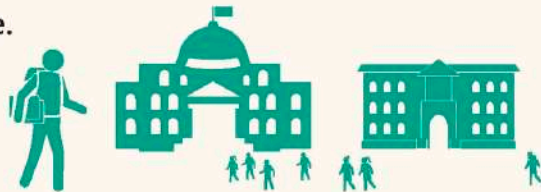
*improve at the same speed as someone*



Noah is **majoring in** international politics at college.  
He hopes to become an ambassador one day.

**major in (US)**

*study something as your main subject at university*



Please take care writing your presentation.  
You'll be **marked down** for  
incorrect spelling.

**mark down**  
*give someone a lower grade*



At the end of your presentation, you  
should **sum up** each of your conclusions.

**sum up**

*give a summary of your argument  
in the conclusion*



## 20.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



I'm moving to Tokyo for a year. I need to brush up on my Japanese.



I'm moving to Tokyo for a year. I need to brush down my Japanese.



1 Leo is the youngest in his class, but manages to keep up with his classmates.



Leo is the youngest in his class, but manages to keep on at his classmates.



2 She's looking into how astronauts might travel to Mars one day.



She's looking onto how astronauts might travel to Mars one day.



3 Sam has dived off his new project. He spent all weekend working on it.



Sam has dived into his new project. He spent all weekend working on it.



4 The library was full of students swotting up on English grammar.



The library was full of students swotting out on English grammar.



5 At the start of your presentation, lay out the main points you are going to discuss.



At the start of your presentation, lay on the main points you are going to discuss.



## 20.4 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

the

work

out

Nadia stayed up all night trying to work out the answer to the equation.

in

majoring

is

1 Noah in majoring is international politics at college.

start

to

over

2 I kept making mistakes, so I decided start to over.

space

focuses

on

3 Patsy's research space focuses on travel.

through

the

worked

4 Fiona through the worked problems in her code to fix the issues.

Aa

## 20.5 READ THE ARTICLE AND WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS ABOVE THEIR DEFINITIONS

1 \_\_\_\_\_  
deal with a problem methodically

2 \_\_\_\_\_  
proceed to the next point

3 \_\_\_\_\_  
contribute toward

4 \_\_\_\_\_  
give someone a lower grade

5 \_\_\_\_\_  
give attention to

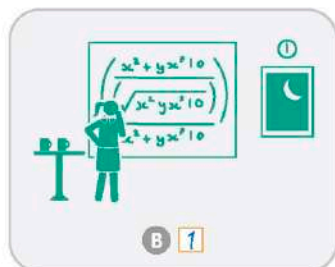
6 \_\_\_\_\_  
present in a clear way

*sum up*  
sum up your argument

How to structure a presentation:  
At the start of your presentation, **lay out** the main points you are going to discuss. Then, **move on to** presenting each of your arguments clearly and succinctly. **Focus on** being coherent and logical as you speak, making sure to emphasize all important points. At the end of your presentation, you should finish by **summing up** each of your conclusions. Include time for interaction with the audience and **work through** all questions calmly and confidently. Take care when writing your presentation, as you will be **marked down** for incorrect spelling and this will **count toward** your final assessment.



## 20.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A ☐B ☐C ☐D ☐E ☐F ☐G ☐H ☐



# 21 At school

## 21.1 SCHOOL

Ola **dropped out** of high school without any qualifications, but she went on to become a successful businesswoman.

**drop out**

*leave school or university without finishing your studies*



Miguel **handed in** his assignment five minutes before the deadline.

**hand in (to)**

*give a piece of work to a teacher, give something to someone in authority*



The teacher **handed out** the worksheet to each member of the class.

**hand out (to)**

*give something to each member of a group, distribute*



The teacher **wiped** the notes **off** the board before Ed had finished copying them.

**wipe off**

*remove something (with a cloth)*



Schools **break up** in July in the UK. There is a six-week summer holiday.

**break up (UK)**

*close for the holidays*



Ramu's **working on** a new art project. It's a huge painting of New York.

**work on**

*spend time or put effort into something*



When the class finished, Arun **packed up** his things and got ready to leave.

**pack up**

*gather your things and put them in a bag or box*



Good morning class.  
Please **take out** your books.

**take out**

*remove something (from a bag)*



Now **turn to** page 25 and complete the exercises.

**turn to**

*open a book at a specific page*





See also:

break up 3, 15, 29, 38 mess around 41

take out 3, 14, 28 turn to 13, 45, 50 wipe off 14

## 21.2 BAD BEHAVIOR

You've spent too much time **goofing off** this semester, Jesse.

**goof off** (US)  
waste time, avoid doing work



I will **not stand for** laziness. It's time you started working harder.

**not stand for**  
not tolerate, not allow someone to do something

The kids have been **playing up** all morning.

**play up** (UK)  
be naughty, misbehave



Ffion is so naughty. She's always **fooling around** in class instead of paying attention.

**fool around**  
behave in a silly way



Despite the teacher's warnings, the children **carried on** misbehaving.

**carry on**  
continue (doing something)



The teacher told his students to stop **messing around**, and to do their work.

**mess around**  
misbehave, do something other than what you should be doing



Mateo and Juanita are very naughty, but Martina lets them **get away with** it.

**get away with**  
do something wrong without being punished for it



Rosie is very rude to her teachers. She's always **answering back**.

**answer back**  
respond rudely (usually to a teacher or parent)



Marco was furious about the broken window, but he **let** Gio and Carmen **off with** a warning.

**let off** (with)  
not punish someone, or give them a very light punishment



Zosia **told** the children **off** when she saw the terrible mess they had made.

**tell off**  
reprimand someone when they have done something wrong



## Aa 21.3 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Ramu's working on a new art project.

**Ramu's thinking of a new art project.** ☒

Ramu's spending time on a new art project. ☐

Ramu's interested in a new art project. ☐

① Schools break up in July in the UK.

Schools open in July. ☐

Schools organize events in July. ☐

Schools close in July. ☐

② Marco let Gio and Carmen off with a warning.

**Marco punished Gio and Carmen.** ☐

Marco did not punish Gio and Carmen. ☐

Marco chatted with Gio and Carmen. ☐

③ Zosia told the children off for the mess they had made.

Zosia congratulated the children. ☐

Zosia reprimanded the children. ☐

Zosia helped the children clean up. ☐

④ Rosie is always answering back to her teachers.

**Rosie responds rudely to her teachers.** ☐

Rosie responds politely to her teachers. ☐

Rosie does not respond to her teachers. ☐

## Aa 21.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Miguel handed in his assignment just before the deadline.



Rosie is very rude. She's always answering back.



The teacher handed out the worksheet to each student.



After the class, Arun packed up his things and got ready to leave.



Ramu's working on a huge painting of New York.



## 21.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR

tell off



play up



drop out



① tell off



not stand for



get away with



② hand in



drop out



take out



③ carry on



answer back



drop out



④ tell off



take out



play up



Aa

## 21.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

close for the holidays

=

*break up*

① give something to each member of a group

=

② remove something (with a cloth)

=

③ not tolerate, not allow someone to do something

=

④ leave school without finishing your studies

=

⑤ look for a certain page

=

Aa

## 21.7 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL



Ola dropped out of school, but went on to become a successful businesswoman.



③ Despite the teacher's warnings, the children \_\_\_\_\_ misbehaving.



① Good morning class. Please \_\_\_\_\_ your books.



④ You've spent too much time \_\_\_\_\_ this semester, Jesse.



② The kids have been \_\_\_\_\_ all morning.



⑤ Mateo and Juanita are very naughty, but Martina lets them \_\_\_\_\_ it.

playing up

take out

goofing off

get away with

carried on

~~dropped out~~

# 22 At work

## 22.1 STARTING AND FINISHING

I **clock in** at 9am every morning.

clock in  
start work



I **clock off** at 5pm every afternoon.

clock off  
finish work



Despite the storm, the engineers **soldiered on** and installed the new phone line.

soldier on  
continue trying to achieve  
something despite difficulties



Debbie **took** the afternoon **off** so she could go to the dentist.

take off  
take a break from work for  
a certain amount of time



I'm not feeling very well today, so I'm going to **call in** sick.

call in  
telephone your workplace



Steve **gets off** work early on Fridays so he can collect his children from school.

get off  
finish work



## 22.2 MEETINGS

Our manager was busy, so she had to **call off** our meeting.

call off  
cancel an event



Let's **talk over** all your designs and make a decision.

talk over  
discuss



Angela **meets up with** her colleagues once a week to discuss all their new ideas.

meet up (with)  
get together with



I might be busy tomorrow, but let's **pencil in** a meeting anyway.

pencil in  
agree a time or date that  
might be changed later





See also:

call in 4, 50 get off 9

take off 5, 6, 9, 55 talk over 36

## 22.3 WORKING

The applications for the new manager position are **piling up**. I'd better start looking through them.

**pile up**

increase to an unmanageable amount



Fiona was struggling to finalize the company's accounts, but she kept **plugging away at** them.

**plug away (at)**

work hard to achieve something difficult



Jennie's been **slogging away** trying to finish writing her presentation.

**slog away (at)**

work very hard for a long time



Kamal's manager **chased up** the report, which was already a week late.

**chase up**

ask someone for something (again)



Ted used to be very proactive, but he's been **slacking off** lately.

**slack off**

avoid hard work



Ola is **carrying out** a survey about worker satisfaction.

**carry out**

complete a task



Gio has been on vacation for two weeks, so he has a lot of work to **catch up on**.

**catch up on**

do work that you did not have time to do earlier



I've got lots to do! I need to **knuckle down** and get it finished.

**knuckle down**

start to work very hard



I've been very busy lately, but I **have next week off** work.

**have off**

have a break from work for a certain amount of time



## 22.4 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL



Steve gets off work early on Fridays so he can collect his children from school.



④ Our manager was busy, so she had to \_\_\_\_\_ our meeting.



① Ted used to be very proactive, but he's been \_\_\_\_\_ lately.



⑤ Jennie's been \_\_\_\_\_ trying to finish writing her presentation.



② I've got lots to do! I need to \_\_\_\_\_ and get it finished.



⑥ Kamal's manager \_\_\_\_\_ the report, which was already a week late.



③ Angela \_\_\_\_\_ her colleagues once a week to discuss all their new ideas.



⑦ I \_\_\_\_\_ at 9am every morning.

call off

chased up

~~gets off~~

slacking off

clock in

knuckle down

meets up with

slogging away



## 22.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR

- A call in ☐
- B knuckle down ☐
- C slog away at ☒
- D have off ☐
- E call off ☐
- F chase up ☐
- G meet up with ☐
- H carry out ☐
- I talk over ☐

Aa

## 22.6 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I clock off at 5pm every afternoon.

1



Let's talk over all your designs and make a decision.

2



Ola is carrying out a survey about worker satisfaction.

3



I've been very busy lately, but I have next week off work.

4



I'm not feeling very well today, so I'm going to call in sick.

Aa

## 22.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Gio has been on vacation for two weeks, so he has a lot of work to **throw up on**.

*Gio has been on vacation for two weeks, so he has a lot of work to catch up on.*

1 The applications for the new manager position are **piling over**. I'd better start looking through them.

2 Fiona was struggling to finalize the company's accounts, but she kept **switching away** at them.

3 Debbie **took** the afternoon **down** so she could go to the dentist.

4 Despite the storm, the engineers **marched on** and installed the new phone line.



# 23 Careers

## 23.1 CAREERS

After 35 years running his own company, Robert is **standing down** and retiring.

**stand down**  
leave an important  
job or position



His daughter Jess is **taking over** the family business.

**take over**  
take responsibility for a  
company or role

Katie has been a therapist for 20 years, so she has a lot of experience to **draw on**.

**draw on**  
make use of your experience



Olivia is trying to **get into** journalism. She's just started an internship at a radio station.

**get into**  
become involved in something,  
start a career



If I ever lose my job at the bank, I'll always have my cooking skills to **fall back on**.

**fall back on**  
use skills that you already have  
(when things go wrong)



When he left school, Paul **set out** to become a millionaire by the time he reached 30.

**set out**  
begin doing something with  
a specific aim in mind



Carolina went on a training course to help her **get ahead at work**.

**get ahead (at)**  
improve your position at work



I **went back to** my job as a mechanic when my children started school.

**go back to**  
return to a job after a break



Joanna is **winding down** her business to take a job managing a large hotel.

**wind down**  
gradually bring to an end



Chad just finished his degree and is **applying for** jobs in the media.

**applying for**  
ask to be considered for a job





See also:

get into **31** put off **55** set out **35, 53**  
wind down **31**

Thanks to his impressive portfolio, Elliot **walked into** a job with a leading fashion designer.

walk into  
find a job easily



Marvin has become such a successful tennis player that he's **branching out into** coaching younger players.

branch out (into)  
start doing something  
different (but related)



Ken's going to **burn himself out** if he keeps working 16 hours a day.

burn out  
become exhausted by working  
too much



We have chosen Diana to **head up** our new sales department.

head up  
lead, be in charge of a  
department or organization



I thought I wanted to be a lawyer, but the workload **put me off**.

put off  
make someone dislike a  
person or thing



Femi has **thrown himself into** his new job at the hair salon. He loves it!

throw (oneself) into  
begin doing something with  
great enthusiasm



Naina is planning to **go into** teaching when she finishes university.

go into  
start a career in something



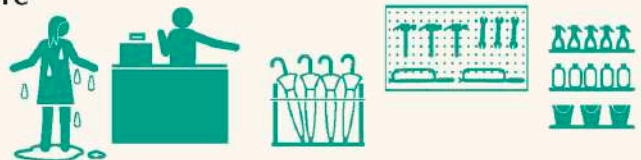
Even though he doesn't like his job, Tom is **sticking with** it until he gets promoted.

stick with  
continue despite difficulties



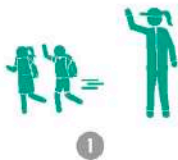
Brian has started selling umbrellas in his store to **cash in on** the recent terrible weather.

cash in on  
take advantage of a situation to make money





## 23.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS



go back to

stick with

head up

wind down

draw on

Aa

## 23.3 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Femi has thrown himself into his new job.

Femi is anxious about his new job. ☐

Femi is enthusiastic about his new job. ☒

Femi doesn't like his new job. ☐

1 Elliot walked into a job with a fashion designer.

Elliot walks to work. ☐

Elliot found the job easily. ☐

Elliot was late to work. ☐

2 Katie has a lot of experience to draw on.

Katie is an artist. ☐

Katie makes use of her experience. ☐

Katie wants to build experience. ☐

3 Naina is planning to go into teaching.

Naina is planning to meet her teacher. ☐

Naina is planning to become a teacher. ☐

Naina is planning to go to school. ☐

4 I went back to my job as a mechanic.

I went to meet the mechanic. ☐

I went back to work. ☐

I want to become a mechanic. ☐

5 Diana heads up our new sales department.

Diana leads the new department. ☐

Diana founded the new department. ☐

Diana dislikes the new department. ☐

6 Chad is applying for jobs in the media.

Chad is not looking for jobs. ☐

Chad is employed in the media. ☐

Chad is looking for jobs in the media. ☐

7 Olivia is trying to get into journalism.

Olivia is trying to become a journalist. ☐

Olivia is trying to meet a journalist. ☐

Olivia is a journalist. ☐

Aa

## 23.4 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

leave an important job or position

= s t a n d d o w n

1 continue despite difficulties

= s \_ \_ \_ \_ w \_ \_ \_

2 ask to be considered for a job

= a \_ \_ \_ \_ f \_ \_ \_

3 take responsibility for a company or role

= t \_ \_ \_ \_ o \_ \_ \_

4 return to a job after a break

= g \_ \_ b \_ \_ \_ t \_ \_

5 gradually bring to an end

= w \_ \_ \_ \_ d \_ \_ \_

Aa

## 23.5 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

improve your position at work

get ahead (at)



4 make someone dislike a person or thing



1 become involved in something, start a career



5 take advantage of a situation to make money



2 become exhausted by working too much



6 use skills that you already have when things go wrong



3 start doing something different (but related)



7 begin doing something with a specific aim in mind



cash in on

set out

branch out (into)

put off

burn out

get into

~~get ahead (at)~~

fall back on

# 24 Business

## 24.1 BUSINESS

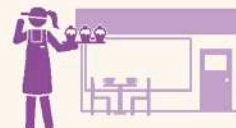
We are proud to announce that our two banks are **entering into** a partnership.

**enter into**  
*begin a (business) relationship*



Katie's trying to **drum up** interest in her café by offering free samples of her cakes.

**drum up**  
*increase support for something*



Marco's garden center is doing well. It **turns over** almost \$250,000 a year.

**turn over**  
*(about a business) earn an amount of money over a certain period of time*



Alan's sportswear company **profited from** the cold weather earlier this year.

**profit from**  
*gain a benefit from a situation*



The board has finally **come to** a decision about the new logo for the company.

**come to**  
*arrive at, reach (a decision)*



Chrissie has just **started up** her own hair salon. It opened last week.

**start up**  
*open a business*



Mario's gas station has just **gone under**. It had been struggling for a long time.

**go under**  
*go bankrupt*



Ellie's company **deals in** antiques. She sells pieces from all over the world.

**deal in**  
*buy and sell goods*



Elsa's tired of running her own business. She's decided to **sell up**.

**sell up**  
*sell a business*



The bank agreed to **write off** the debt, saving Ethan's company from bankruptcy.

**write off**  
*cancel a debt*





All of the banks in our town have **closed down**. Everyone's using online banking.

close down  
close permanently



My plans to expand my business **fell through** when the bank refused to lend me enough money.

fall through  
fail to happen



Gemma has **bought out** all the other partners. She now owns the whole company.

buy out  
buy someone's share of a business



Rita's company sells furniture, but **farms out** all of its manufacturing to other people.

farm out (to)  
give some of your work to people who do not work for your company



Our business is growing, so we are **taking on** more staff.

take on  
employ



We need the CEO to **sign off on** this important decision.

sign off on  
give official approval to something



A new bookstore is **opening up** in our neighborhood.

open up  
open for the first time



Al's store is **selling off** a lot of its stock. There are some great bargains there.

sell off  
sell something quickly at a reduced price



The company is facing difficulties. We may need to **lay off** some staff.

lay off  
stop employing someone



Could you **draw up** a contract for our new clients?

draw up  
write a contract



Aa

## 24.2 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



We are proud to announce that our two banks are entering into a partnership.

1



All of the banks in our town have closed down. Everyone's using online banking.

2



Mario's gas station has just gone under. It had been struggling for a long time.

3



Katie's trying to drum up interest in her café by offering free samples of her cakes.

4



The bank agreed to write off the debt, saving Ethan's company from bankruptcy.

Aa

## 24.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Elsa's tired of running her own business. She's decided to ~~trade~~ / ~~sell~~ / ~~walk~~ up.

- 1 Marco's garden center is doing well. It turns **down** / **over** / **forward** almost \$250,000 a year.
- 2 We need the CEO to **sign** / **mark** / **stamp** off on this important decision.
- 3 The board has finally **arrived** / **reached** / **come** to a decision about the new logo for the company.
- 4 Ellie's company deals **on** / **in** / **for** antiques. She sells pieces from all over the world.
- 5 Could you **sketch** / **draw** / **paint** up a contract for our new clients?
- 6 The company is facing difficulties. We may need to lay **off** / **out** / **down** some staff.



## 24.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR

write off	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	sell off	<input type="checkbox"/>	take on	<input type="checkbox"/>
1 close down	<input type="checkbox"/>	fall through	<input type="checkbox"/>	start up	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 gone under	<input type="checkbox"/>	buy out	<input type="checkbox"/>	come to	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 sign off	<input type="checkbox"/>	draw up	<input type="checkbox"/>	lay off	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 take on	<input type="checkbox"/>	open up	<input type="checkbox"/>	drum up	<input type="checkbox"/>
5 enter into	<input type="checkbox"/>	fall through	<input type="checkbox"/>	fall from	<input type="checkbox"/>
6 walk up	<input type="checkbox"/>	farm out to	<input type="checkbox"/>	profit from	<input type="checkbox"/>

Aa

## 24.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

Could you draw up a contract for our new clients?



1 Our business is growing, so we are \_\_\_\_\_ more staff.



2 A new bookstore is \_\_\_\_\_ in our neighborhood.



3 Chrissie has just \_\_\_\_\_ her own hair salon. It opened last week.



4 Gemma has \_\_\_\_\_ all the other partners.



5 Al's store is \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of its stock.



6 Alan's sportswear company \_\_\_\_\_ the cold weather.



opening up

bought out

selling off

taking on

~~draw up~~

profited from

started up

# 25 Numbers and amounts

## 25.1 NUMBERS AND AMOUNTS

Katie's bills have been **stacking up**.  
She's in a lot of debt now.

**stack up**  
*increase in number or amount*



The price for our cruise was going to be \$1,207, but the travel agent agreed to **round it down to** \$1,200.

**round down (to)**  
*reduce a number to a nearby number (usually ending in zero)*



The kids are **counting down** the days before we go camping.

**count down**  
*count the amount of time before something happens*



The company's share price has been falling, but it's finally starting to **bottom out**.

**bottom out**  
*stop getting worse, reach its lowest point*



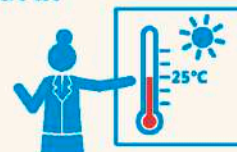
The number of people buying clothes online **shot up** last year.

**shoot up**  
*increase dramatically*



The temperature varies a bit in the summer, but it **averages out at** about 25°C.

**average out (at)**  
*result in an average of*



We estimated the cost of the project to be £14,900, but **rounded it up to** the nearest thousand.

**round up (to)**  
*increase a number to a nearby number (usually ending in zero)*



Alfie **counted out** the money he owed me and placed it on the table.

**count out**  
*count things one by one and place them somewhere*



After falling dramatically in May, the price of gold has **evened out** over the past two months.

**even out**  
*become level, contain fewer differences or irregularities*



Over the last six months, it has started to **level out**.

**level out**  
*become level, stop increasing or decreasing*



See also:

add up 14, 41 take away 30, 55

The coach **divided** the children **up into** two equal teams.

divide up (into)  
separate into groups,  
pieces, or sections



If you want to set yourself a budget, start by **adding up** all your monthly expenses.

add up  
calculate the total



Renovating a house is very expensive. The cost soon **mounts up**.

mount up  
gradually increase in  
number or amount



Shreya **counted up** the number of people wanting coffee and went to make some.

count up  
add together things or people  
belonging to a group



When Georgia was paying her check, she **added on** a 20% tip.

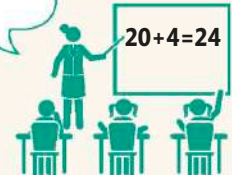
add on  
attach an extra thing or  
amount to something



## 25.2 CALCULATIONS

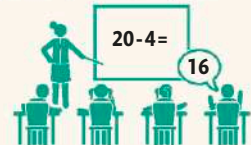
If you **add 20 and 4 together**, you get 24.

add together  
calculate the total of two  
or more numbers



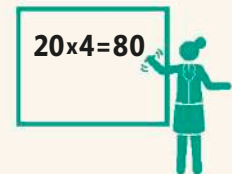
The teacher asked what's left when you **take 4 away from 20**.

take away (from)  
subtract

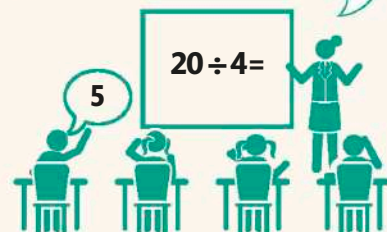


For the next question, the class had to **multiply 20 by 4**.

multiply by  
add a number to itself a  
certain number of times



Does anyone know what **20 divided by 4 equals**?



divide by  
find how many times a larger  
number contains a smaller number



## 25.3 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

The kids are counting down the days before we go camping.



The kids are counting below the days before we go camping.



1 The number of people buying clothes online shot up last year.



The number of people buying clothes online bought up last year.



2 The coach divided the children above into two equal teams.



The coach divided the children up into two equal teams.



3 Shreya counted up the number of people wanting coffee and went to make some.



Shreya counted on the number of people wanting coffee and went to make some.



4 When Georgia was paying her check, she added on a 20% tip.



When Georgia was paying her check, she divided on a 20% tip.



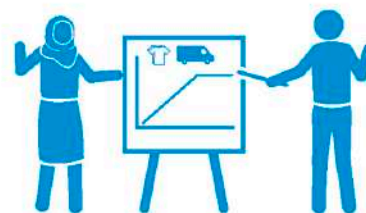
## 25.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☐ 1



C ☐



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐

## 25.5 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Alfie **counted of** the money he owed me and placed it on the table.



*Alfie counted out the money he owed me and placed it on the table.*

- 1 Katie's bills have been **stacking over**. She's in a lot of debt now.



- 2 The company's share price has been falling, but it's finally starting to **ground out**.



- 3 The temperature varies a bit in the summer, but it **averages in at** about 25°C.



- 4 We estimated the cost of the project to be £14,900, but **mounted it up to** the nearest thousand.



- 5 If you want to set yourself a budget, start by **scoring up** all your monthly expenses.



## 25.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

gradually increase in number or amount

=

*mount up*

- 1 count the amount of time before something happens

=

- 2 calculate the total

=

- 3 result in an average of

=

- 4 become level, stop increasing or decreasing

=

- 5 count things one by one and place them somewhere

=

- 6 stop getting worse, reach its lowest point

=

level out

count out

count down

add up

~~mount up~~

average out (at)

bottom out

# 26 Success and failure

## 26.1 SUCCESS

Nia **built on** her experience working at a hotel to set up her own guesthouse.

**build on**

*use your knowledge, experience, or success as a way to become more successful*



When I didn't get into college, I started my own successful business. Everything **worked out** in the end!

**work out**

*have a positive outcome*



Anita's hard work has **paid off**. The dress looks beautiful.

**pay off**

*benefit after investing time or money*



The Scottish team **pulled off** an amazing victory, scoring two goals in the last four minutes.

**pull off**

*be successful (despite difficulties)*



Marco did not study at all for the English exam but somehow **scraped by**.

**scrape by**

*only just succeed in doing something*



Clive **muddled through** the interview without any preparation. He was shocked when he got the job.

**muddle through**

*manage to do something despite having no plan or understanding of it*



I know these results are disappointing, but keep working and you will **win out** eventually.

**win out**

*be successful after difficulty*



I never imagined James would be so great playing Hamlet, but he really **carried it off**.

**carry off**

*unexpectedly succeed at something*



Maria's dream of becoming famous finally **came off** when her song became a huge summer hit.

**come off**

*be successful (about a plan)*



Kwase **sailed through** his driving test. He didn't make any mistakes.

**sail through**

*deal with something very easily*





See also:

come off 6, 52   give up 55   pay off 14  
run into 14   work out 20, 33

## 26.2 FAILURE

Marcello tried to fix the washing machine, but he has **given up**.

give up  
stop trying to achieve something



Many smaller stores have **lost out** since the supermarket opened in town.

lose out (to)  
be beaten by something else



Simon's campaign **ran into** difficulties when he was accused of lying.

run into  
begin to experience something negative



The decorators have **screwed up** this job! We won't use them again.

screw up  
make a mess of something (informal)



## 26.3 CAUSES OF SUCCESS AND FAILURE

The future success of our company **rides on** us winning this contract.

ride on  
depend on



When accepting the award, Carla **put** her success **down to** hard work.

put down to  
attribute events to a particular reason



Having supportive parents really **contributed to** my success.

contribute to  
help to cause something



My teachers told me I'd never **amount to** anything, but now I'm a lawyer.

amount to  
develop into (often used in the negative)



When Al saw how many people were making money by selling things online, he decided to **get in on** it.

get in on  
become involved in a successful activity



## 26.4 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

- |   |  |              |
|---|--|--------------|
|   | be successful (about a plan)           | win out      |
| 1 | only just succeed in doing something   | sail through |
| 2 | unexpectedly succeed at something      | come off     |
| 3 | be successful after difficulty         | carry off    |
| 4 | deal with something very easily        | run into     |
| 5 | begin to experience something negative | screw up     |
| 6 | stop trying to achieve something       | scrape by    |
| 7 | make a mess of something               | give up      |



## 26.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR


 scrape by ☒ give up ☐

 1 screw up ☐ put down to ☐

 2 carry off ☐ ride on ☐

 3 win out ☐ win over ☐

 4 come off ☐ come up ☐

 5 run into ☐ run off ☐

## 26.6 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



When accepting the award, Carla put her success down to hard work.



When accepting the award, Carla put her success up to hard work.



1



My teachers told me I'd never add up to anything, but now I'm a lawyer.



My teachers told me I'd never amount to anything, but now I'm a lawyer.



2



Anita's hard work has paid up. The dress looks beautiful.



Anita's hard work has paid off. The dress looks beautiful.



3



Many smaller stores have lost out since the supermarket opened in town.



Many smaller stores have closed out since the supermarket opened in town.



4



Nia looked on her experience working at a hotel to set up her own guesthouse.



Nia built on her experience working at a hotel to set up her own guesthouse.



5



Having supportive parents really attributed to my success.



Having supportive parents really contributed to my success.



## 26.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

The future success of our company **drives on** us winning this contract.

*The future success of our company rides on us winning this contract.*

1 Clive **muddled on** the interview without any preparation. He was shocked when he got the job.

2 When I didn't get into college, I started my own successful business. Everything **worked up** in the end!

3 The Scottish team **pushed off** an amazing victory, scoring two goals in the last four minutes.

4 When Al saw how many people were making money by selling things online, he decided to **get out on** it.

5 Kwase **sailed into** his driving test. He didn't make any mistakes.

# 27 At home

## 27.1 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "LOCK"

Clive makes sure that he **locks** his tools **away** in his shed.

**lock away**

*put something away and lock the door*



When Ben got home, he realized that he'd forgotten his keys and was **locked out**.

**lock out**

*stop someone from entering by locking the door*



The janitor didn't notice Alex when he locked the doors. He accidentally **locked** him **in**.

**lock in**

*stop someone from leaving by locking the door*



## 27.3 APPLIANCES AND HOUSEHOLD ITEMS

Did you **leave** the lights **on** when you left the house?

**leave on**

*leave turned on*



The lights in the house **went out**, so Clara lit some candles.

**go out**

*(lights) stop shining*



It was a very hot day, so Les **put** the fan **on**.

**put on (UK)**

*make a piece of equipment start working*



Andy **blew** the candles **out** before going to bed.

**blow out**

*make a candle stop burning by blowing air at it*



If you're bored, **turn on** the television. There's a good movie on tonight.

**turn on**

*make something start working*



Make sure you **turn** the television **off** before going to bed.

**turn off**

*make something stop working*





**See also:**

come on **52, 56** go off **3, 8, 30, 35** go out **3, 5, 54**  
put on **6, 41, 55** turn off **9** turn on **1** turn up **1, 4**

## 27.2 MOVING

Pete's new neighbors **moved in** last weekend.

**move in(to)**  
*start living in new home*



My parents have decided to **move away** and live in the country.

**move away**  
*go and live in a different area*



We finally sold our house. We're **moving out** today.

**move out (of)**  
*stop living in your old home and move somewhere else*



Jools has **settled into** his new apartment very quickly.

**settle in(to)**  
*get used to living in a new place*



When Elsa heard her favorite song on the radio, she **turned up** the volume and began dancing.

**turn up**  
*increase the volume (or power) of a piece of equipment*



Paula's neighbor asked her to **turn** her stereo **down** because it was too loud.

**turn down**  
*decrease the volume (or power) of a piece of equipment*



Cassie thought her computer was broken until she realized that she hadn't **plugged it in**.

**plug in(to)**  
*connect an electrical appliance to the electricity supply*



The street lights **come on** at dusk, when the sun sets.

**come on**  
*start working (automatically)*



The street lights **go off** at dawn, when the sun rises.

**go off**  
*stop working (automatically)*



# 27.4 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL



Pete's new neighbors moved in last weekend.



④ When Elsa heard her favorite song on the radio, she \_\_\_\_\_ the volume.



① If you're bored, \_\_\_\_\_ the television. There's a good movie on tonight.



⑤ The street lights \_\_\_\_\_ at dusk, when the sun sets.



② When Ben got home, he realized that he'd forgotten his keys and was \_\_\_\_\_.



⑥ The lights in the house \_\_\_\_\_, so Clara lit some candles.



③ My parents have decided to \_\_\_\_\_ and live in the country.



⑦ We finally sold our house. We're \_\_\_\_\_ today.

moving out

come on

turn on

move away

locked out

~~moved in~~

turned up

went out

Aa

## 27.5 MATCH THE PHRASAL VERBS TO THEIR OPPOSITES

	put on	go off
1	come on	turn on
2	move out	turn off
3	lock in	move in
4	turn off	turn down
5	turn up	lock out



## 27.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A ☐B ☒C ☐D ☐E ☐F ☐

Aa

## 27.7 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

(lights) stop shining	=	<u>go out</u>
1 make something stop working	=	_____
2 stop someone from leaving by locking the door	=	_____
3 leave turned on	=	_____
4 decrease the volume of a piece of equipment	=	_____
5 start working (automatically)	=	_____

lock in

turn down

come on

~~go out~~

leave on

turn off

# 28 Chores

## 28.1 CLEANING

We need to **tidy up** before the guests arrive.

tidy up  
make tidy again



Elliot's dad told him to **clear away** all his toys.

clear away  
put things back in their proper places



Jason told me to **mop up** the water that I'd spilled on the floor.

mop up  
clean liquid off a surface with a mop



This room is a mess! **Pick up** all these clothes!

pick up  
take something off the floor



If the chicken smells bad, you should **throw it away**.

throw away  
discard, put in the trash



When Ella cooks dinner, her boyfriend **washes up** the dishes.

wash up (UK)  
clean the dishes



After painting the living room, Paul and Sally **put** all the furniture **back**.

put back  
return an object to its original place



It was a sunny morning, so Ian **hung** his washing **out** to dry.

hang out  
hang washing on a clothesline to dry



There was a lot of mess to **clean up** after the party.

clean up  
make tidy again



We all **pitched in** to get it finished more quickly.

pitch in  
join in, help others to do something



See also:

cut back **14** hang out **5** pick up **9, 10, 11, 31, 38** pull up **9**  
put up **35** take out **3, 14, 21** throw away **31**

We **cleared out** the garage this weekend.  
There was so much junk in there!

clear out  
remove all the unnecessary things  
from a room or building



I **wipe down** the table each evening  
after we've eaten.

wipe down  
clean a surface with a cloth



On Tuesday mornings, I **take**  
the trash **out**.

take out  
move something outside



Nousha's room looked much  
nicer after she'd **put up**  
some pictures.

put up  
hang something on a wall



Karl **swept up** the trash from the  
party and put it into bags.

sweep up  
clean the ground with a broom



## 28.2 GARDENING

The tree in our backyard died,  
so we had to **chop it down**.

chop down  
make a tree fall to the ground



The hedge in Doug's yard was getting  
too big, so he **cut it back**.

cut back  
remove some branches from  
a tree, bush, or hedge



I'm **digging up** the lavender bushes  
so I can move them to a different  
part of the garden.

dig up  
remove a plant from the ground  
by digging around and under it



Paul spent the whole afternoon **pulling**  
**up** weeds. His yard was full of them.

pull up  
remove a plant from  
ground by pulling



After finishing the gardening,  
Scott **put** his tools **away**.

put away  
return an object to its  
proper place



Aa

## 28.3 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

- |   |   |           |
|---|---|-----------|
|   | take something off the floor                  | pull up   |
| 1 | return an object to its original place        | chop down |
| 2 | make a tree fall to the ground                | pick up   |
| 3 | join in, help others to do something          | take out  |
| 4 | remove a plant from the ground by pulling     | wash up   |
| 5 | move something outside                        | put back  |
| 6 | remove all the unnecessary things from a room | pitch in  |
| 7 | clean the dishes                              | clear out |

Aa

## 28.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Elliot's dad told him to clear ~~up~~ / away / ~~out~~ all his toys.



1 Nousha's room looked much nicer after she'd put ~~up~~ / in / on some pictures.



2 Paul spent the whole afternoon pulling ~~on~~ / in / up weeds.



3 Karl swept ~~down~~ / over / up the trash from the party and put it into bags.



4 After finishing the gardening, Scott put his tools ~~up~~ / away / out.



5 Jason told me to mop ~~up~~ / around / over the water that I'd spilled on the floor.



## 28.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



This room is a mess! Pick up  
all these clothes!



3 I \_\_\_\_\_ the table each evening after we've eaten.



1 The tree in our backyard died, so we had to \_\_\_\_\_.



4 We need to \_\_\_\_\_ before the guests arrive.



2 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ the lavender bushes so I can move them to a different part of the garden.



5 The hedge in Doug's yard was getting too big, so he \_\_\_\_\_.

Aa

## 28.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

We all **pitched out** to get it finished quickly.  
We all pitched in to get it finished quickly.

1 On Tuesday mornings, I **take** the trash **off**.

2 If the chicken smells bad, **throw** it **over**.

3 Ian **hung** his washing **in** to dry.

4 We **cleared over** the garage this weekend.

5 There was a mess to **clean on** after the party.

# 29 Cooking

## 29.1 COOKING

Patrick **broke up** the chocolate before adding it to the cake mixture.

**break up**

*separate something into smaller pieces*



Nadiya left the cherry pie on the windowsill to **cool down**.

**cool down**

*become cooler*



I always **measure out** all of my ingredients before trying a new recipe.

**measure out**

*weigh or take a certain amount*



You should **mix in** the eggs and milk with the other ingredients.

**mix in**

*combine (with other ingredients)*



My sister can **whip up** a tasty meal in minutes from just a few ingredients.

**whip up**

*prepare (a meal) quickly*



Before serving the curry I made sure to **fish out** any bones.

**fish out**

*remove from a liquid*



The sauce **boiled over**, leaving a mess on the stove top.

**boil over**

*flow over the edge of a container (during cooking)*



Dev took the leftovers from the fridge and **heated up** in the microwave.

**heat up**

*make hotter*



My breakfast typically **consists of** bread and cheese, served with coffee.

**consist of**

*be formed of*



We managed to **fill up** three jars with the cookies we'd baked.

**fill up**

*fill a container to the top*





## 29.2 PREPARING A RECIPE

### RECIPE

#### CHICKEN CASSEROLE



##### INGREDIENTS

2 onions  
3 carrots  
5 potatoes  
2 chicken thighs  
1 pint vegetable stock  
Chopped parsley (to garnish)

**SERVES:** 4

**PREP TIME:** 15 minutes

**COOK TIME:** 30 minutes

##### METHOD

1. Start by **chopping up** some onions, carrots, and potatoes, then **set** them **aside** for later.
2. Fry the meat on a medium heat for 10 minutes (you may want to **cut off** any extra fat from the meat).
3. **Pour in** the stock, add the vegetables, and boil for 20 minutes.
4. **Finish off** the stew by adding chopped parsley.

**Note:** To make a vegetarian version, **leave out** the meat and use mushrooms instead.

Start by **chopping up** some onions, carrots, and potatoes.

**chop up**  
*cut into small pieces*



After you've chopped the vegetables, **set them aside** for later.

**set aside**  
*keep something for later*



I always **cut off** the fat from the meat before cooking it.

**cut off**  
*remove something from a larger piece*



When the meat is cooked, **pour in** the stock.

**pour in**  
*add a liquid*



**Finish off** the stew by adding chopped parsley.

**finish off**  
*complete*



To make a vegetarian version, **leave out** the meat and use mushrooms instead.

**leave out**  
*exclude, not include*



## 29.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

You should mix in the eggs and milk with the other ingredients.

- ① I always \_\_\_\_\_ the fat from the meat before cooking it.
- ② My breakfast typically \_\_\_\_\_ bread and cheese, served with coffee.
- ③ Nadiya left the cherry pie on the windowsill to \_\_\_\_\_.
- ④ Before serving the curry I made sure to \_\_\_\_\_ any bones.
- ⑤ My sister can \_\_\_\_\_ a tasty meal in minutes from just a few ingredients.

cool down

~~mix in~~

cut off

whip up

fish out

consists of



## 29.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR



measure out ☒  
measure over ☐



① chop off ☐  
chop up ☐



② set apart ☐  
set aside ☐



③ cut off ☐  
cut away ☐



④ mix up ☐  
mix in ☐



⑤ pour in ☐  
pour over ☐



⑥ finish off ☐  
finish up ☐



⑦ fish out ☐  
fish for ☐



⑧ cool off ☐  
cool down ☐



⑨ leave out ☐  
leave in ☐

## 29.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The sauce boiled over, leaving a mess on the stove top.



Dev took the leftovers from the fridge and heated them up in the microwave.



I always measure out all of my ingredients before trying a new recipe.



Patrick broke up the chocolate before adding it to the cake mixture.



We managed to fill up three jars with the cookies we'd baked.



My sister can whip up a tasty meal in minutes from just a few ingredients.



## 29.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Start by **chopping ups** onions and carrots.

Start by chopping up onions and carrots.

① After chopping the vegetables, **set** them **beside**.

④ **Mix over** the eggs with the other ingredients.

⑤ **Finish in** the stew by adding chopped parsley.

② **Cut on** the fat from the meat before cooking it.

⑥ Before serving, make sure to **fish on** any bones.

③ When the meat is cooked, **pour up** the stock.

⑦ For a vegetarian version, **leave down** the meat.

# 30 Food and drink

## 30.1 FOOD

Rosa **served up** a wonderful seafood dish.

serve up  
present food to other people



Martin's grandmother told him he could only have dessert if he **ate up** all his vegetables.

eat up  
eat all of something



Selma and Roy prefer to **eat in**. It's much cheaper than going to a restaurant.

eat in  
eat a meal at home



That fish really **didn't agree with me**. I have a terrible stomachache.

not agree with  
make someone feel ill



I think this milk has **gone off**. It smells terrible.

go off (UK)  
become bad to eat or drink



Apple pie and ice cream **go together** perfectly.

go together  
taste or look good together



Our restaurant can **cater for** about 100 customers at a time.

cater for  
provide for



## 30.2 DRINK

After the wedding, we all **drank to** the bride and groom.

drink to  
toast someone or something



The café was about to close, so we **drank up** and got ready to leave.

drink up  
drink all of something





See also:

break off 49 go off 8, 27, 35

run out (of) 15 take away 25, 55

I was going to make a lasagna, but we've **run out of** pasta.

run out (of)

use all of something, not have any more of something



Why don't we **eat out** for a change? We could go to that new Italian restaurant instead.

eat out

eat in a café or restaurant, eat away from home

Daniel **broke off** a piece of bread and dipped it in the olive oil.

break off

separate a smaller piece of something from a larger piece



Lisa **shared out** the chocolates, giving the children two each.

share out

give each person the same amount of something



Greg was so hungry that he **polished off** the entire cake.

polish off

eat or drink all of something



After a long day at the beach, my kids **wolfed down** their dinner.

wolf down

eat all of something very quickly



Paul and Sarah ordered two hamburgers and sodas to **take away**.

take away (UK)

take food out of a restaurant to eat



This cake is delicious, but it could **do without** all the cream on top.

do without

be better without



I **washed down** my pizza with a cold drink.

wash down

drink something after eating (informal)



Your mug's almost empty, Peter. Would you like me to **top it up**?

top up

fill a cup or glass that is partly empty



Aa

## 30.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Greg was so hungry that

we all drank to the bride and groom.

1 I washed down my pizza

giving the children two each.

2 Our restaurant can cater for

he polished off the entire cake.

3 After the wedding,

but we've run out of pasta.

4 Lisa shared out the chocolates,

about 100 customers at a time.

5 I was going to make a lasagna,

with a cold drink.

Aa

## 30.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

After the wedding, we all drank ~~on~~ / ~~to~~ / ~~over~~ the bride and groom.1 Paul and Sarah ordered two hamburgers and sodas to take ~~away~~ / ~~off~~ / ~~with~~.2 The café was about to close, so we drank ~~down~~ / ~~in~~ / ~~up~~ and got ready to leave.3 I washed ~~up~~ / ~~down~~ / ~~in~~ my pizza with a cold drink.4 After a long day at the beach, my kids wolfed ~~out~~ / ~~down~~ / ~~on~~ their dinner.5 Daniel broke ~~over~~ / ~~off~~ / ~~down~~ a piece of bread and dipped it in the olive oil.



### 30.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR



- serve up ☒  
serve over ☐



- 1 run out of ☐  
run down ☐



- 2 go on ☐  
go off ☐



- 3 eat up ☐  
eat down ☐



- 4 wash down ☐  
wash up ☐



- 5 go together ☐  
go with ☐

Aa

### 30.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

eat or drink all of something

= p o l i s h o f f

1 eat away from home

= e \_ \_ o \_ \_

2 fill a cup or glass that is partly empty

= t \_ \_ u \_

3 toast someone or something

= d \_ \_ \_ t \_

4 eat a meal at home

= e \_ \_ i \_

5 taste or look good together

= g \_ t \_ \_ \_ \_

# 31 Free time

## 31.1 HOBBIES

Anastasia absolutely **lives for** skiing. She goes to the mountains whenever she can.

**live for**  
have a passion for, consider something  
the most important thing in your life



It takes a while to **get into** horseback riding.

**get into**  
become interested in, begin  
to enjoy an activity



Adi's painting skills are really **coming along**. He might become an artist one day.

**come along**  
improve at a skill or activity



I recently **got back into** cycling. I hadn't done it since I was a teenager.

**get back into**  
start doing something again  
after not doing it for some time



It's hard at first, but if you **keep at it** you'll start to love it.

**keep at**  
keep practicing a skill or activity



After she retired, Kim **took up** yoga. She does it for half an hour each morning.

**take up**  
start learning a new skill or activity



## 31.2 RELAXING

Nathan told his daughters to stop **lazing about**, and help to tidy the house.

**laze about**  
relax, do no work



On my days off work, I like to **sit around** the garden doing nothing.

**sit around**  
spend time sitting, doing little



After the exam, the students went to the local park to **wind down**.

**wind down**  
become calm (after a period  
of work or excitement)



I spend most Sundays **lying around** the house.

**lie around**  
relax on the couch or in bed





Learning the piano isn't easy, but if you **stick at** it, you could become a great pianist.

**stick at** (UK)

keep practicing a skill or activity  
despite difficulties



While working in Seoul I tried to **pick up** some Korean by talking to local people.

**pick up**

learn a new skill informally



If you want to be a great tennis player, it helps if you **start out** at a young age.

**start out**

begin doing a hobby or career



Ken's currently **working toward** getting a black belt in judo.

**work toward**

invest time in something with the aim of achieving something



Fabio could have been a great guitarist, but he **threw** it all **away** by never practicing.

**throw away**

waste a talent or opportunity



I found running very hard when I started, but I **get** a lot of satisfaction **out of** it now.

**get out of**

enjoy



Luiza spent the evening **curled up** on the couch reading a book.

**curl up**

lie or sit with your arms and legs pulled up towards you



After a stressful day, I take a bath to help me **chill out**.

**chill out**

relax, stop feeling angry or stressed



Aden needs to **loosen up**. Tell him to come and dance with us!

**loosen up**

relax, stop being so formal



On Friday evenings, Josh likes to **kick back** and watch some television.

**kick back**

stop work and relax (informal)



## 31.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

It takes a while to get **into** / ~~behind~~ / ~~above~~ horseback riding.

- 1 Ken's currently working **around** / **toward** / **for** getting a black belt in judo.
- 2 Nathan told his daughters to stop lazing **beside** / **about** / **along**, and help to tidy the house.
- 3 After the exam, the students went to the local park to wind **low** / **below** / **down**.
- 4 I recently got back **into** / **onto** / **for** cycling. I hadn't done it since I was a teenager.
- 5 On Friday evenings, Josh likes to kick **ahead** / **back** / **around** and watch some television.
- 6 Anastasia absolutely lives **by** / **on** / **for** skiing. She goes to the mountains whenever she can.

## 31.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I found running very hard when I started, but I get a lot of satisfaction out of it now.



While working in Seoul I tried to pick up some Korean by talking to local people.



Fabio could have been a great guitarist, but he threw it all away by never practicing.



Learning the piano isn't easy, but if you stick at it, you could become a great pianist.



Adi's painting skills are really coming along. He might become an artist one day.



### 31.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS



sit around

live for

curl up

take up

start out

Aa

### 31.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

keep you it. at love you'll If to start it,

*If you keep at it, you'll start to love it.*

the around I most spend Sundays lying house.

1 \_\_\_\_\_

loosen us. to and Aden dance with needs up

2 \_\_\_\_\_

On off, I around to sit the my days like garden.

3 \_\_\_\_\_

curled Louiza evening up the spent couch. on the

4 \_\_\_\_\_

I chill After stressful take bath a to a out. day,

5 \_\_\_\_\_

# 32 Health

## 32.1 HEALTH

My son always **bounces back** quickly whenever he gets ill.

**bounce back**  
*to recover quickly or without difficulty*



The wound seems to be **healing up** well. It will be better soon.

**heal up (UK)**  
*(about a wound) become completely healthy*



Elaine's rash began to **clear up** after she started using the cream.

**clear up**  
*go away or get better*



My brother's a nurse. He **cares for** sick people at the local hospital.

**care for**  
*take care of*



There's a bad cold **going around** my office at the moment. Everyone is ill.

**go around**  
*spread from person to person*



Mona has an awful headache. She doesn't **feel up to** working today.

**feel up to**  
*feel in a good enough condition*



Paola's hay fever usually **flares up** in the spring.

**flare up**  
*suddenly appear or reappear*



It's taken me weeks to **get over** this cold, but I finally feel better.

**get over**  
*recover, feel well again*



Danny's thumb **swelled up** after he was stung by a wasp.

**swell up**  
*(about a swelling) become bigger*



After a few hours, the swelling had started to **go down**.

**go down**  
*(about a swelling) become smaller*





See also:

care for **3** clear up **11, 50** get over **45, 53**  
go around **54** go down **12, 54** pass on **38**

I think I'm **coming down with** the flu.  
I have a headache and my nose  
is running.

come down with  
become ill with



When Rachel **came around** after the  
operation, her husband was  
sitting at her bedside.

come around  
become conscious again



I was very sad to hear that your  
grandmother has **passed away**.

pass away  
die



My son **passed on** the virus  
to his sisters.

pass on  
give (an illness) to someone else



One of the musicians **passed out** during  
the performance this evening.

pass out  
faint, become unconscious



It was a very risky operation,  
but Josh **pulled through**.

pull through  
survive a serious illness or operation



Tina's leg muscles **seized up** after she  
had completed the marathon.

seize up  
become stiff, difficult to move



I've been ill for weeks, but I've finally  
managed to **shake it off**.

shake off  
fully recover from



Ella's been **throwing up** all day. She must  
be suffering from food poisoning.

throw up  
vomit



As the painkiller **wore off**, Shahid's  
tooth began to ache again.

wear off  
gradually lose its effectiveness



Aa

## 32.2 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

to recover quickly or without difficulty

heal up

1 become completely healthy

throw up

2 vomit

bounce back

3 suddenly appear or reappear

go around

4 become conscious again

seize up

5 become stiff, difficult to move

come around

6 spread from person to person

flare up

Aa

## 32.3 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

It was a very risky operation, but Josh pulled ~~under~~ / ~~over~~ / through.1 Elaine's rash began to clear ~~out~~ / ~~in~~ / up after she started using the cream.2 I think I'm coming down ~~with~~ / ~~for~~ / to the flu.3 Ella's been throwing ~~over~~ / ~~up~~ / down all day.4 My son passed ~~over~~ / through / on the virus to his sisters.5 It's taken me weeks to get ~~over~~ / around / through this cold, but I finally feel better.



### 32.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



One of the musicians passed out during the performance this evening.



3 Danny's thumb \_\_\_\_\_ after he was stung by a wasp.



1 Paola's hay fever usually \_\_\_\_\_ in the spring.



4 My brother's a nurse. He \_\_\_\_\_ sick people at the local hospital.



2 After a few hours, the swelling had started to \_\_\_\_\_.



5 I was very sad to hear that your grandmother has \_\_\_\_\_.

Aa

### 32.5 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

become stiff, difficult to move

=

seize up

1 take care of

=

\_\_\_\_\_

2 feel in a good enough condition

=

\_\_\_\_\_

3 spread from person to person

=

\_\_\_\_\_

4 gradually lose its effectiveness

=

\_\_\_\_\_

5 survive a serious illness or operation

=

\_\_\_\_\_

# 33 Sports and exercise

## 33.1 SPORTS

Clara was **sent off** the pitch after pushing over another player.

**send off**

tell someone to leave a game because they have broken the rules



Angela **knocked** Kirsten **out** in the first round of the competition.

**knock out (of)**

defeat a team or player, removing them from a competition



The crowd **cheered** Tony **on** as he approached the finish line.

**cheer on**

encourage someone by cheering



Pete wanted to start playing baseball, so he **signed up for** his school team.

**sign up (for)**

join a team or activity



My sister is a judo champion. She **ranks among** the best in the country.

**rank among**

be included among



Five runners have **gotten through to** the final. Whoever wins this race gets the trophy.

**get through (to)**

reach (a stage in a competition)



## 33.2 EXERCISE

After a big meal, Chris goes for a brisk walk to **burn off** the extra calories.

**burn off**

use up energy (by doing exercise)



For this yoga position, you have to **stretch** your arms **out** as far as you can.

**stretch out**

extend



Playing tennis all afternoon with Gus has **worn** Charlie **out**.

**wear out**

make very tired



Jamal was completely **wiped out** after cycling up the mountain.

**wipe out**

make extremely tired





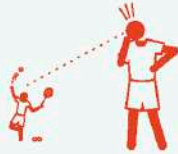
**See also:**

aim at **34** get through (to) **38** keep from **51** keep up (with) **20** send off **38**  
turn around **19** warm up **11** wear out **49** work out **20, 26**

Frank watched Phillip play tennis. He was **sizing up** his opponent before the next day's match.

**size up**

*look (at a person or situation) and decide how to act*



It looked like the Eagles were going to lose the match, but they **turned it around** at the last minute.

**turn around**

*make a bad situation better*



I picked up my bow and **aimed** another arrow **at** the target.

**aim at**

*direct something at something else*



Sami invited me to **join in** a game of cricket.

**join in**

*get involved in something that others are already doing*



My knee injury **kept me from** completing the marathon this year.

**keep from**

*prevent someone from doing something*



I struggle to **keep up with** my brother. He's much fitter than I am.

**keep up (with)**

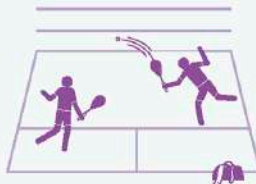
*move at the same speed*



After a long day in the office, playing squash helps me to **work off** all my stress.

**work off**

*get rid of (energy or an emotion)*



After finishing the race, Sandra **warmed down** by stretching her legs.

**warm down**

*stretch and relax your body after exercise*



Before playing a game of soccer, I always **warm up** by jogging slowly.

**warm up**

*prepare your body for exercise*



Leo **works out** at his local gym every morning.

**work out**

*exercise*



Aa

### 33.3 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL TO CREATE PHRASAL VERBS

After a big meal, Chris goes for a brisk walk to **burn off** the extra calories.

- 1 After finishing the race, Sandra **warmed** by stretching her legs.
- 2 Jamal was completely **wiped** after cycling up the mountain.
- 3 Clara was **sent** the pitch after pushing over another player.
- 4 Five runners have **gotten** to the final. Whoever wins this race will win the trophy.
- 5 My sister is a judo champion. She **ranks** the best in the country.
- 6 I struggle to **keep** with my brother. He's much fitter than I am.

out

among

~~off~~

through

up

down

off

Aa

### 33.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



Playing tennis all afternoon with Gus has worn Charlie out.



Playing tennis all afternoon with Gus has worn Charlie off.



- 1 Before playing a game of soccer, I always warm down by jogging slowly. ☐
- Before playing a game of soccer, I always warm up by jogging slowly. ☐



- 2 For this yoga position, you have to stretch your arms out as far as you can. ☐
- For this yoga position, you have to stretch your arms in as far as you can. ☐



- 3 Pete wanted to start playing baseball, so he signed on for his school team. ☐
- Pete wanted to start playing baseball, so he signed up for his school team. ☐



- 4 Angela knocked Kirsten out in the first round of the competition. ☐
- Angela knocked Kirsten down in the first round of the competition. ☐



- 5 My knee injury kept me through completing the marathon this year. ☐
- My knee injury kept me from completing the marathon this year. ☐



### 33.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND WRITE THE SENTENCES BELOW THE IMAGES



*Sami invited me to join  
in a game of cricket.*



1 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_

Aa

### 33.6 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

direct something at something else

=

*aim at*

1 move at the same speed

=

2 prepare your body for exercise

=

3 look (at a person or situation) and decide how to act

=

4 make a bad situation better

=

5 use up energy (by doing exercise)

=

6 encourage someone by cheering

=

7 get rid of (energy or an emotion)

=

# 34 The arts

See also:  
aim at 33

## 34.1 CREATIVITY

Sami and Shahid **made** the cardboard box **into** a robot.

**make into**

*change something into something else*



The architects have **mocked up** a model of the new museum.

**mock up**

*make a model of something*



Greg and Chloe **colored in** pictures of dinosaurs after their trip to the museum.

**color in**

*use colored pencils or pens to add colors to a drawing*



## 34.2 MEDIA

The new music channel is **aimed at** people who like jazz.

**aim at**

*be intended for or targeted at*



This new TV show **feeds on** people's curiosity about aliens.

**feed on**

*take advantage of*



I **tune into** my favorite radio show every Sunday morning.

**tune into**

*watch or listen to a program or station on the television or radio*



## 34.3 MUSIC

At the start of the horror movie, scary music started to **fade in**.

**fade in**

*gradually become louder*



As the music **died away**, the presenter stepped onto the stage.

**die away**

*become quieter before ending*



The noise from the parade **faded away** as it moved away from us.

**fade away**

*gradually become quieter*



My new headphones help me concentrate by **filtering out** background noise.

**filter out**

*remove or block something*





## 34.4 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

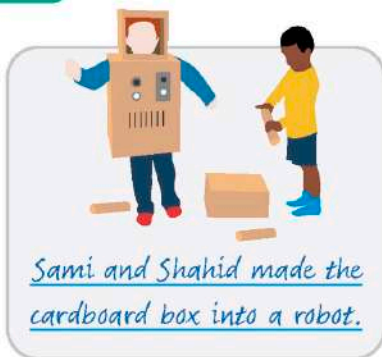
As the music died away, the presenter stepped onto the stage.

- 1 The new music channel is \_\_\_\_\_ people who like jazz.
- 2 At the start of the horror movie, scary music started to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 My new headphones help me concentrate by \_\_\_\_\_ background noise.
- 4 This new TV show \_\_\_\_\_ people's curiosity about aliens.
- 5 The noise from the parade \_\_\_\_\_ as it moved away from us.
- 6 I \_\_\_\_\_ my favorite radio show every Sunday morning.

feeds on    fade in    ~~died away~~    tune into    filtering out    aimed at    faded away



## 34.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND WRITE THE SENTENCES BELOW THE IMAGES



1 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_

# 35 Travel

See also: arrive at 47 bring back 16 check out 10, 50 end up 17  
get around 50, 53 get away 13 get back (from) 1 go back 16, 54  
go off 3, 8, 27, 30 put up 28 set off 46, 53 set out 23, 53

## 35.1 TRAVEL

When Krishna **arrived at** the villa, the party had already begun.

arrive at  
reach a destination



During his vacation in Rome, Anton hired a moped to **get around** the city.

get around  
travel from place to place



When they arrived at the hotel, Julia and John went to reception to **check in**.

check in(to)  
register your arrival at a hotel or airport



Julia and John **checked out of** the hotel and went to the airport.

check out (of)  
leave a hotel after paying the bill



On your way to London you'll **pass by** Cambridge, a beautiful university city.

pass by  
pass another place (while on the way somewhere else)



Dan and I went to Paris for our honeymoon. We **went back** last month for our 25th wedding anniversary.

go back  
visit again



By the time we **got back from** our cycle ride, it was already getting dark.

get back from  
return from



We were supposed to hike to the mountain, but we **ended up** by the lake.

end up  
arrive somewhere unintentionally



Marimar and I **went off to** Miami recently.

go off (to)  
go on a trip or vacation



It was great to **get away** for a few days!

get away  
go somewhere for a break or to relax

Hi Paula,  
 We're having a great time in Cyprus.  
 Our hotel overlooks the sea. We **soak up** the  
 atmosphere each morning as we have our  
 coffee. We're **packing in** lots of sightseeing.  
 We saw some ruins and a vineyard today.  
 We're **heading for** Athens today. We can't  
 wait! We'll **bring you back** some local olives.  
 They're delicious!  
 See you soon!  
 Ted and Sandy



Our hotel overlooks the sea. We **soak up**  
 the atmosphere each morning as  
 we have our coffee.

soak up  
 look and listen, enjoy



We're **packing in** lots of sightseeing during  
 our vacation. We saw some ruins and a  
 vineyard today.

pack in  
 include (a lot of something)



We've been in Cyprus for a few days, but  
 we're **heading for** Athens today.

head for  
 move towards a certain destination



We **brought you back** some local olives.  
 They're delicious!

bring back  
 return with



Whenever we **set out on** a hike, we always  
 take waterproofs, a compass, and a map.

set out (on)  
 start a journey



We **set off for** Chicago at dawn when there  
 would be less traffic on the roads.

set off (for)  
 start a journey



On our way to Barcelona, we **stopped over**  
 in a lovely hotel for the night.

stop over  
 stay somewhere on the way to  
 somewhere else



We managed to **put** the tent **up** even  
 though it was raining heavily.

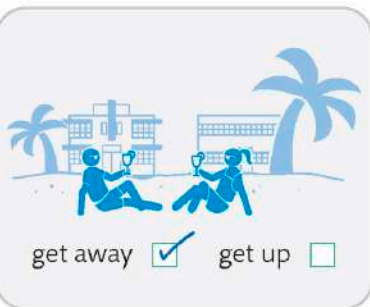
put up  
 put together, erect







### 35.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR



get away ☒ get up ☐



1 get under ☐ get around ☐



2 check on ☐ check in ☐



3 get back from ☐ get back to ☐



4 put out ☐ put up ☐



5 soak in ☐ soak up ☐

Aa

### 35.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

to get Anton moped around the hired city. a

Anton hired a moped to get around the city.

brought olives. We you local back some

1 \_\_\_\_\_

hotel. They out the checked of

2 \_\_\_\_\_

Miami I and off Marimar recently. went to

3 \_\_\_\_\_

great away days! get few a for It to was

4 \_\_\_\_\_









Aa

## 35.4 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- During his vacation in Rome,
- 1 On our way to Barcelona,
- 2 Whenever we set out on a hike,
- 3 We set off for Chicago at dawn
- 4 When she arrived at the hotel,
- 5 We managed to put the tent up
- we stopped over in a hotel for the night.
- Julia went to the reception to check in.
- Anton hired a moped to get around the city.
- even though it was raining heavily.
- we always take a compass and a map.
- when there would be less traffic.

Aa

## 35.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

- By the time we got back from our cycle ride, it was dark. 
- 1 When Krishna \_\_\_\_\_ the villa, the party had begun. 
- 2 We're \_\_\_\_\_ lots of sightseeing during our vacation. 
- 3 It was great to \_\_\_\_\_ for a few days. 
- 4 We've been in Cyprus all week, but we're \_\_\_\_\_ Athens today. 
- 5 On your way to London, you'll \_\_\_\_\_ Cambridge. 
- arrived at
- pass by
- heading for
- ~~got back from~~
- get away
- packing in

# 36 Talking

## 36.1 TALKING

Ben's not keen on buying a new car.  
I'm trying to **talk him round**.

**talk round** (UK)

*manage to persuade someone*



Kirsty **talked** the workers **through** the new software system.

**talk through**

*explain how something works*



Marco is always **talking at** people. He never gives them a chance to speak.

**talk at**

*talk to someone without letting them speak*



My kids **talked** me **into** getting a puppy. They've promised to take care of it.

**talk into**

*persuade someone to do something*



Shona wanted to dye her hair green, but her sister **talked** her **out of** it.

**talk out of**

*persuade someone not to do something*



Every time Rita tries to say something, Greg **talks over** her.

**talk over**

*talk loudly while someone else is talking*



Uncle Toby still **talks down to** me like I'm a child, even though I'm 25.

**talk down to**

*talk in a patronizing way to*



While Julia was explaining her idea, Rupert **cut in** to tell her she was wrong.

**cut in**

*interrupt*



We were chatting about movies when Tina **launched into** a speech about her favorite actors.

**launch into**

*suddenly begin speaking with enthusiasm about something*



Simone spent the whole of lunch **mouth off** about how much she hates her new boss.

**mouth off**

*talk negatively about something or someone (informal)*



See also:

blurt out 51 come up 16, 50, 52

talk over 22

**Shut up** and listen  
to me for once!

**shut up**  
*stop talking (rude)*



I think you should **tone down** your language.

**tone down**  
*make your language less strong*

I couldn't hear Louise at all. The man next to us was completely **drowning her out**.

**drown out**  
*talk louder than someone else*



Lauren **comes out with** the funniest things. Today she told me she wants to live on the Moon.

**come out with**  
*say something surprising*



Diana is always **rambling on** about how things were better when she was a child.

**ramble on**  
*talk for a long time about something (in an annoying or incoherent way)*



The lecturer **droned on** for what felt like hours. We were half asleep by the end.

**drone on**  
*talk for a long time in a very boring way*



Craig was trying to tell a joke, but **tailed off** as he realized that no one was listening.

**tail off**  
*stop talking gradually*



After the concert, I **struck up** a conversation with one of the guitarists.

**strike up**  
*start a conversation*



When soccer **came up in** conversation, Bill and I realized we support the same team.

**come up (in)**  
*be mentioned in conversation, usually unexpectedly*



Andy **blurted out** the name of the winner. It was supposed to be a secret.

**blurt out**  
*say something without thinking about it first*





Aa

## 36.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Every time Rita tries to say something,

1 Kirsty talked the workers

2 Shona wanted to dye her hair purple,

3 Diana is always rambling on about

4 Uncle Toby still talks down to me

5 Shut up

6 My kids talked me into

through the new software system.

getting a puppy.

Greg talks over her.

and listen to me for once!

how things were better when she was a child.

like I'm a child, even though I'm 25.

but her sister talked her out of it.

Aa

## 36.3 MATCH THE VERBS TO THE CORRECT PARTICLES TO MAKE PHRASAL VERBS

strike

down

1 drown

into

2 mouth

up

3 ramble

out

4 tone

on

5 talk

through

6 launch

off



## 36.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

A B C D E F



Aa

## 36.5 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

Uncle Toby still talks down to me like I'm a child, even though I'm 25.



droned on

struck up

~~talks down to~~

talking at

tone down

blurted out

① I think you should \_\_\_\_\_ your language.



② Andy \_\_\_\_\_ the name of the winner by mistake.



③ The lecturer \_\_\_\_\_ for what felt like hours.



④ Marco is always \_\_\_\_\_ people and not letting them speak.



⑤ After the concert, I \_\_\_\_\_ a conversation with the guitarist.



Aa

## 36.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Lauren **goes out with** the funniest things. Today she told me she wants to live on the Moon.

Lauren comes out with the funniest things. Today she told me she wants to live on the Moon.

① Ben's not keen on buying a new car. I'm trying to **talk** him **straight**.

② When soccer **came down in** conversation, Bill and I realized we support the same team.

③ Craig was trying to tell a joke, but **tailed up** as he realized that no one was listening.

④ While Julia was explaining her idea, Rupert **chopped in** to tell her she was wrong.

⑤ Simone spent the whole of lunch **teething off** about how much she hates her new boss.

# 37 Reading and writing

## 37.1 WRITING

Before you can use the gym, you need to **fill in** this form.

fill in  
complete a form



Miguel **scribbled down** a note to his housemate to say that he was going out for the evening.

scribble down  
write something quickly or roughly



Ted always **writes out** his essays instead of typing them.

write out  
write something in full by hand



Celia read through her notes from today's lecture and **typed them up**.

type up  
type something from written notes



The journalist **jotted down** the details as Dan described his role in the new movie.

jot down  
make written notes quickly



## 37.2 READING

I've only **dipped into** Nia's new novel, but it's fantastic so far.

dip into  
read short parts of a book or text



It **stands for** Unidentified Flying Object.

What does UFO mean?

stand for  
represent, be an abbreviation for



We **pored over** the old document looking for clues.

pore over  
read with great attention



*Adventures in the Wilderness* should **make for** interesting reading!

make for  
result in



Your essay's too long, Marcel. You need to **cut it down** a bit.



Okay. I'll try to **cut out** 500 words.

**cut down**  
reduce in size

**cut out**  
remove material from a text

When I write a restaurant review I usually **write down** a few thoughts while I'm eating.

**write down**  
record information by writing it



I **wrote up** my review at home later that evening.

**write up**  
write or type something in full from notes



When completing the form, Damian **wrote in** his age.

**write in**  
enter information by writing it



Paco read the book and **noted down** the most important points.

**note down**  
make written notes



Alexandra **flicked through** a magazine while she waited to get her hair cut.

**flick through**  
look through a book or magazine quickly or casually



Max **read through** the full report before giving his opinion.

**read through**  
read something from start to finish



As the judge **read out** the names of the winners, Pablo waited hopefully.

**read out**  
read aloud (for others to hear)



Fatima **read up on** ancient Greece before her history exam.

**read up on**  
research or revise a topic








Aa

## 37.3 MATCH THE PHRASAL VERBS TO THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

	read out	write something quickly or roughly
1	note down	read with great attention
2	cut down	read aloud (for others to hear)
3	write up	complete a form
4	scribble down	write or type something in full from notes
5	stand for	reduce in size
6	pore over	represent, be an abbreviation for
7	fill in	make written notes

Aa

## 37.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

	I've only dipped into Nia's new novel, but it's fantastic so far.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	I've only dipped over Nia's new novel, but it's fantastic so far.	<input type="checkbox"/>
1 	Before you can use the gym, you need to fill in this form.	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Before you can use the gym, you need to fill on this form.	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 	As the judge read in the names of the winners, Pablo waited hopefully.	<input type="checkbox"/>
	As the judge read out the names of the winners, Pablo waited hopefully.	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 	When completing the form, Damian wrote on his age.	<input type="checkbox"/>
	When completing the form, Damian wrote in his age.	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 	Alexandra flicked through a magazine while she waited to get her hair cut.	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Alexandra flicked above a magazine while she waited to get her hair cut.	<input type="checkbox"/>



Aa

### 37.5 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL



Miguel scribbled down a note to his housemate to say that he was going out.



③ "UFO" \_\_\_\_\_ Unidentified Flying Object.



① Max \_\_\_\_\_ the full report before giving his opinion.



④ The journalist \_\_\_\_\_ the details as Dan described his role in the new movie.



② Ted always \_\_\_\_\_ his essays instead of typing them.



⑤ Fatima \_\_\_\_\_ on ancient Greece before her history exam.

stands for    ~~scribbled down~~    read up    writes out    jotted down    read through

Aa

### 37.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL TO CREATE PHRASAL VERBS

When I write a restaurant review, I usually write down a few thoughts while I'm eating.

① I'll try to cut 500 words from my essay if it is too long.

② *Adventures in the Wilderness* should make interesting reading!

③ Paco read the book and noted the most important points.

④ We pored the old document looking for clues.

for    out    ~~down~~    over    down

See also: break up 3, 15, 21, 29 get through (to) 33 hang up 6 pass on 32 pick up 9, 10, 11, 28, 31 put through 55 send off 33

### 38.1 ON THE PHONE

I had to call Megan six times before she finally **picked up** the phone.

**pick up**  
answer a phone call



Hi Laura, sorry I'm cooking at the moment. Can I **call you back** in 10 minutes?

**call back**  
return a call, phone someone who tried to speak to you earlier



Anna works from home on Tuesdays, so she will **dial into** the meeting.

**dial in(to)**  
join a conference call



After chatting for over an hour, Simon and I said goodbye and **hung up**.

**hang up**  
end a phone call (often suddenly)



Could you please **speak up**? I can't hear you very well!

**speak up**  
talk more loudly



I've called Olly a few times this evening, but I can't **get through**.

**get through (to)**  
make contact with someone by phone



Sorry, I can't hear you very well, I'm afraid. You keep **breaking up**.

**break up**  
become difficult to hear (because of a bad signal or connection)



I **phoned around** to ask if any of my friends wanted to go to the beach with me.

**phone around**  
phone several people



Could I speak to Mr. Yamamoto, please?

Certainly. I'll **put you through** now, madam.

**put through (to)**  
connect someone to the person they want to speak to



## 38.2 LEAVING A MESSAGE

Dave **passed on** a message telling me that Rob had called.

**pass on**

give someone a message that someone else has given to you



Rob wants to **follow up on** the conversation we had about the new logo.

**follow up on**

find out more information, do something in response to something



He asked me to **get back to him** as soon as possible.

**get back (to)**

reply to a phone call or email, contact someone (with a response to a question)



Hi Ulrika,

Rob called and asked me to **pass on** a message. He wants to **follow up on** your chat about the new logo last week. Can you **get back to** him as soon as you can?

Dave

## 38.3 SENDING AND REPLYING

I love receiving letters from my dad. I always **write back** immediately.

**write back**

reply by letter or email



I sent Paul a text asking him where he was. He **texted back** saying he was on the train.

**text back**

reply by text message



Claudia **sent** wedding invitations **out to** all her friends and family.

**send out (to)**

send to a group of people



Chris emailed me a week ago, but I only just remembered to **email him back**.

**email back**

reply by email



Our company is trying to **reach out to** new customers by offering discounts.

**reach out (to)**

contact



Murat completed all the forms and **sent** them **off to** the passport office.

**send off (to)**

send something by post or email



Aa

## 38.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I had to call Megan six times before she finally picked ~~out~~ / ~~over~~ / **up** the phone.

- ① Rob wants to **chase** / **follow** / **catch** up on the conversation we had about the new logo.
- ② Claudia sent wedding invitations **up** / **off** / **out** to all her friends and family.
- ③ Dave passed **up** / **off** / **on** a message telling me that Rob had called.
- ④ Sorry, I can't hear you very well, I'm afraid. You keep **crumbling** / **breaking** / **tearing** up.
- ⑤ I've called Olly a few times this evening, but I can't get **among** / **into** / **through**.
- ⑥ Could you please speak **down** / **on** / **up**? I can't hear you very well!

Aa

## 38.5 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



Murat completed all the forms and sent them off to the passport office.



I sent Paul a text asking him where he was. He texted back saying he was on the train.



Claudia sent wedding invitations out to all her friends and family.



Chris emailed me a week ago, but I only just remembered to email him back.



I love receiving letters from my dad. I always write back immediately.





### 38.6 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS



1



2



3



4



pick up

speak up

call back

hang up

put through

Aa

### 38.7 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

back

get

to

He asked me to get back to him as soon as possible.

the

into

dial

① Anna works from home on Tuesdays, so she will \_\_\_\_\_ meeting.

through

you

put

② I'll \_\_\_\_\_ to Mr. Yamamoto now, madam.

reach

to

out

③ Our company is trying to \_\_\_\_\_ new customers by offering discounts.

up

hung

and

④ After chatting for over an hour, Simon and I said goodbye \_\_\_\_\_.

back

you

call

⑤ Hi Laura, sorry I'm cooking at the moment, can I \_\_\_\_\_ in 10 minutes?

# 39 Thoughts and ideas

See also: come across 1, 52  
think through 50  
throw out 17

## 39.1 IDEAS

They **bombarded** us with too much information during the training course.

**bombard with**  
*ask too many questions, give too much information*



Gill and the design team are **bouncing** ideas **off** each other before the show next week.

**bounce off**  
*exchange creative ideas to see how other people respond to them*



The president's speech **touched on** the economy, healthcare, and education.

**touch on**  
*briefly mention something in a talk or text*



I wrote a proposal for more environmentally friendly policies and **put it to** the directors.

**put to**  
*make a suggestion so that others can choose to accept it or not*



When my husband suggested buying a new kitchen, I **ran with** it.

**run with**  
*do what someone suggests*



When I told my friends I was starting my own business, they all **got behind** the idea.

**get behind**  
*offer support to someone*



The creative manager asked her team to **throw out** as many ideas as they could.

**throw out**  
*suggest lots of spontaneous ideas*



We have **ruled out** three of the candidates. It's a choice between Danny and Carmen.

**rule out**  
*remove someone or something as an option when making a choice*



Ted has **come up with** some good ideas for a new logo.

**come up with**  
*think of an idea, suggestion, or plan*



He decided to **put forward** the version with the star.

**put forward**  
*offer an opinion, idea, or suggestion*



## 39.2 REALIZING THINGS

The artist's feelings of anger **come across** very strongly in this painting.

**come across**  
*be communicated*



Experts have **attributed** this painting to Joan Miró because of the distinctive style.

**attribute to**  
*believe that a certain person said or created something*



It finally **dawned on** me that Claude was the killer.

**dawn on**  
*become clear to someone*



It had never **occurred to** me that such a charming character could commit such a terrible crime.

**occur to**  
*suddenly come into someone's mind*



## 39.3 THOUGHTS

While writing her memoir, Rebecca **reflected on** her childhood.

**reflect on**  
*carefully think about something*



Before deciding whether or not to move to Canada, we need to **think it through**.

**think through**  
*considering the advantages and disadvantages of something*



Selma is very creative. She **thinks up** lots of wonderful dishes.

**think up**  
*invent a new plan or idea in your mind*



There's a lot to think about when buying a house, but it often **boils down to** money.

**boil down to**  
*be the most important reason*



I asked Zoya if she'd like to work for us. She's **thinking it over**, and will let us know tomorrow.

**think over**  
*carefully think about a plan or idea before making a decision*



The teacher asked us all to **think of** a famous person from history and write a story about them.

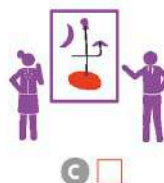
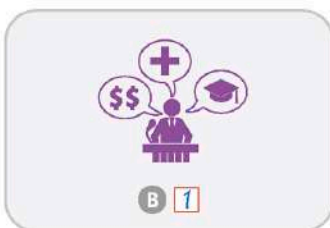
**think of**  
*create a mental image of something or someone*







### 39.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



Aa

### 39.5 MATCH UP THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES THAT MEAN THE SAME THING

The president's speech touched on the economy, healthcare, and education.

When I told my friends I was starting my own business, they all offered support.

1 When my husband suggested buying a new kitchen, I ran with it.

The president's speech briefly mentioned the economy, healthcare, and education.

2 When I told my friends I was starting my own business, they all got behind the idea.

Experts believe that Joan Miró created this painting because of the distinctive style.

3 They bombarded us with too much information during the training course.

When my husband suggested buying a new kitchen, I did what he suggested.

4 Experts have attributed this painting to Joan Miró because of the distinctive style.

The artist's feelings of anger are communicated strongly in this painting.

5 The artist's feelings of anger come across strongly in this painting.

They gave us too much information during the training course.



Aa

## 39.6 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

## SEPARABLE

---



---



---



---



---



---

## INSEPARABLE

*run with*

---



---



---



---



---



---

come across

bounce off

come up with

put to

get behind

think through

~~run with~~

bombard with

touch on

think over

Aa

## 39.7 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING PHRASAL VERBS



While writing her memoir, Rebecca  
reflected on her childhood.



3 We have \_\_\_\_\_ three of the candidates. It's a choice between Danny and Carmen.



1 The creative manager asked her team to \_\_\_\_\_ as many ideas as they could.



4 Ted has \_\_\_\_\_ some good ideas for a new logo.



2 It finally \_\_\_\_\_ me that Claude was the killer.



5 Selma is very creative. She \_\_\_\_\_ lots of wonderful dishes.

# 40 Explaining things

See also:  
fill in 37

## 40.1 EXPLAINING THINGS

The politician **alluded to** housing in his speech, but mostly spoke about transportation.

**allude to**  
*mention something indirectly*



How many times do I have to **spell it out** to you? You're not allowed to use your phone in class.

**spell out**  
*explain something very clearly (usually with anger or frustration)*



During her speech, the senator kept **coming back to** her financial policies.

**come back to**  
*return to a subject*



The interviewer asked me to **expand on** my experience of working with animals.

**expand on**  
*give more details about something*



I asked the professor if he could **go back over** some of the points from the lecture.

**go back over**  
*explain the details of something again*



Pete couldn't remember the French word for "swimming," so he **acted it out**.

**act out**  
*explain or show something by performing or re-enacting it*



Yuri managed to **put** his ideas **across** very well during the debate.

**put across**  
*successfully explain an idea or express a feeling*



My friend **pointed out** some of the mistakes I'd made in my code.

**point out**  
*help someone to notice something*



Becky asked Sarah to **fill her in on** the latest gossip from the office.

**fill (someone) in (on)**  
*provide the latest or most important information about something*



Gio didn't know anything about computers, so he asked the salesperson to **dumb it down** for him.

**dumb down**  
*make something easier to understand*





## 40.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR



spell out ☒  
allude to ☐



1 expand on ☐  
point out ☐



2 act out ☐  
dumb down ☐



3 come back to ☐  
expand on ☐



4 fill in on ☐  
point out ☐



5 put across ☐  
go back over ☐

## Aa

## 40.3 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

give more details about something

= e x p a n d o n

1 successfully explain an idea or express a feeling

= p a

2 make something easier to understand

= d d

3 help someone to notice something

= p o

4 return to a subject

= c b t

5 mention something indirectly

= a t

6 explain the details of something again

= g b o

# 41 Truth and lies

## 41.1 TRUTH

I never **caught on** that Dad's company was in such debt.

catch on  
*realize something is happening*



Conan finally **owned up to** breaking the window. He'd been denying it all morning.

own up (to)  
*admit that something was your fault*



When it **came out** that he was bankrupt, I was shocked!

come out  
*become known*



I have to **level with** you, Anu. The cake looks lovely, but it tastes terrible.

level with  
*tell someone the truth*



## 41.2 LIES

We **fell for** the salesman's talk. The car we bought broke down after a few days.

fall for  
*be tricked into believing something*



Tyler has been promising to pay me back for months, but he's just **stringing me along**.

string along  
*give someone false hopes or make them believe something that is false*



After eating all the cake, John tried to **cover it up** by claiming the dog had eaten it.

cover up  
*hide the truth from other people*



Pio's always **making up** excuses for handing in his homework late. Today, he claimed his school bag had been stolen.

make up  
*invent a story to explain something*



Alice accused me of **messing her around** when I canceled our date for a third time.

mess around  
*treat someone badly by deceiving them or changing plans regularly*



Larry's claim that he was at home on the night of the crime didn't **add up**.

add up  
*make sense, be a logical explanation*





**See also:**

add up 14, 25   come out 5, 12   cover up 6   fall for 3   make out 52  
make up 44, 52   mess around 21   put on 6, 27, 55

It's really hard to **suss** the new neighbors **out**.  
They don't say anything about themselves.

**suss out** (UK)

*understand what someone wants,  
or what kind of person they are*



I've been trying to **find out** from  
Nisha who Sammy's dating.

**find out**

*discover information*



Gary was always exaggerating about  
how rich he was, but Safiya could  
**see through** his lies.

**see through**

*be aware that something is not true*



I think she knows more  
than she's **letting on**.

**let on**

*admit or reveal something*



Amrit promised his mother he'd stay home  
and study, but she **caught him out** when  
she heard him come home late.

**catch out**

*discover that someone is lying*



Josie tried to **explain away** the damage to  
my car by saying it was just a small scratch.

**explain away**

*try to persuade someone that a bad situation  
is not important or not your fault*



The CEO has been **playing down** the  
company's financial problems.

**play down**

*make a problem seem unimportant*



Mario **glossed over** the bad result, claiming  
the team would soon be back on form.

**gloss over**

*try to make bad news or a  
mistake seem unimportant*



Kirstie's been **making out** that  
everything's okay, but I know she's  
stressed about her interview.

**make out**

*pretend*



It looked as if Aaron had been injured,  
but I knew he was **putting it on**.

**put on**

*pretend*



## 41.3 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

	discover that someone is lying	see through
1	be aware that something is not true	level with
2	try to make bad news or a mistake seem unimportant	catch out
3	hide the truth from other people	add up
4	make sense, be a logical explanation	cover up
5	be tricked into believing something	gloss over
6	invent a story to explain something	fall for
7	tell someone the truth	make up



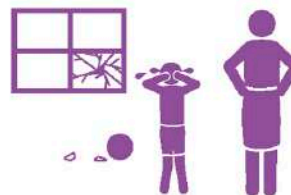
## 41.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR

suss out <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	explain away <input type="checkbox"/>	see through <input type="checkbox"/>
1 play down <input type="checkbox"/>	make up <input type="checkbox"/>	make out <input type="checkbox"/>
2 cover up <input type="checkbox"/>	come out <input type="checkbox"/>	level with <input type="checkbox"/>
3 let on <input type="checkbox"/>	find out <input type="checkbox"/>	mess around <input type="checkbox"/>
4 gloss over <input type="checkbox"/>	string along <input type="checkbox"/>	add up <input type="checkbox"/>
5 put on <input type="checkbox"/>	catch out <input type="checkbox"/>	own up <input type="checkbox"/>
6 catch on <input type="checkbox"/>	explain away <input type="checkbox"/>	fall for <input type="checkbox"/>

# 41.5 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL



I never caught on that Dad's company was in such debt.



4 Conan finally owned up to breaking the window. He'd been denying it all morning.



1 I think she knows more than she's letting on.



5 The CEO has been explaining away the company's financial problems.



2 We fell for the salesman's talk. The car we bought broke down after a few days.



6 I've been trying to find out from Nisha who Sammy's dating.



3 When it came out that he was bankrupt, I was shocked!



7 Josie tried to play down the damage to my car by saying it was just a small scratch.

fell for

explain away

find out

letting on

owned up

came out

~~caught on~~

playing down

# 42 Encouragement

## 42.1 ENCOURAGEMENT AND PERSUASION

The thought of winning first prize **spurred** Farukh **on**.

**spur on**

*encourage someone, inspire someone to do something*



Helen has **put** me **onto** this great new hair salon. I'm going to check it out.

**put onto**

*tell someone about something they might find useful*



When Zoe asked her daughter why she'd stolen the cookies, she said her elder brother had **put** her **up to** it.

**put up to**

*encourage someone to do something that is wrong*



Lisa's speech in favor of a new nature reserve has **brought** many people **around** to the idea.

**bring around**

*persuade someone to support your idea*



Kendra was very nervous, but was happy to see her friends **rooting** for her.

**root for**

*show your support for someone*



My son was upset, so I bought him an ice cream to **buck** him **up**.

**buck up**

*make someone feel happier*



Marcus's friends **egged** him **on** as he climbed the tree.

**egg on**

*encourage someone to do something (often something naughty)*



The crowd **urged** Mona **on** as she approached the end of the tightrope.

**urge on**

*encourage someone to do something*



Rahul was skeptical about electric cars until the salesman **reasoned** with him.

**reason with**

*offer logical arguments to try to change someone's mind*



He eventually **won** him **over** by explaining how eco-friendly they are.

**win over**

*successfully persuade someone to support your idea*





The thought of winning first prize spurred Farukh on.



The thought of winning first prize spurred Farukh off.



① Helen has put me onto this great new hair salon. I'm going to check it out.



Helen has taken me onto this great new hair salon. I'm going to check it out.



② Lisa's speech in favor of a new nature reserve has brought many people around to the idea.



Lisa's speech in favor of a new nature reserve has brought many people about to the idea.



③ Kendra was very nervous, but was happy to see her friends planting for her.



Kendra was very nervous, but was happy to see her friends rooting for her.



④ Zoe's daughter said her elder brother had put her up to stealing the cookies.



Zoe's daughter said her elder brother had put her onto stealing the cookies.



### 42.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



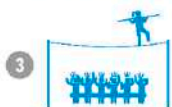
Marcus's friends egged him on as he climbed the tree.



① Kendra was very nervous, but was happy to see her friends \_\_\_\_\_ her.



② Rahul was skeptical about electric cars until the salesman \_\_\_\_\_ him.



③ The crowd \_\_\_\_\_ Mona \_\_\_\_\_ as she approached the end of the tightrope.



④ He eventually \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_ by explaining how eco-friendly they are.



⑤ My son was upset, so I bought him an ice cream to \_\_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_\_.

# 43 Agreeing and disagreeing

## 43.1 AGREEING AND DISAGREEING

Everyone **agrees with** John that Sian should get the job.

agree with  
have the same opinion as someone



I want to go on an expensive vacation this year. I'm trying to persuade my husband to **go along with** the idea.

go along with  
unwillingly agree to do something



I can always **count on** my sister to comfort me when I'm upset.

count on  
rely on someone



During the debate, the politician **hit out at** her opponents.

hit out at  
strongly criticize someone



Our local representative has **come out against** the plans for a new housing development.

come out against  
reveal your opposition to something in public



Martin and Simon **disagreed with** each other about what color to paint the kitchen.

disagree with  
believe that someone or something is wrong



My aunt **frowns on** people wearing shoes indoors. She makes her friends take them off when they visit.

frown on  
disapprove of something



Laura **objected to** Ankita's proposals for the new restaurant.

object to  
be opposed to something



Danny **pulled Roberta up on** her attitude towards the environment.

pull up on (UK)  
criticize someone for a particular thing



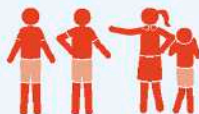
Whenever there's a disagreement at work, Paulina always **sides with** our boss. It's so irritating!

side with  
support someone in an argument



Carla **stood up to** the bullies. She told them to stop being mean to her brother.

stand up to  
*defend someone or yourself  
against someone else*



The workers at the factory are **pushing back on** the management's attempt to introduce a pay cut.

push back (on)  
*resist or oppose something*



I think Sonia **has** something **against** me. She never wants to talk to me.

have (something) against  
*dislike someone for an unknown reason*



My idea was **shot down** by the panel before I had a chance to explain it to them.

shoot down  
*reject an idea*



When Emily's boss accused her of being lazy, she **fought back** by showing him the clothes she had made that morning.

fight back  
*respond to someone who  
has criticized you*



## 43.2 AVOIDING CONFLICT

Terry's colleagues always make fun of his shirts, but he just **laughs it off**.

laugh off  
*deal with criticism or a difficult  
situation by laughing at it*



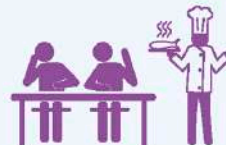
Donna bought her brother some chocolates to **make up for** the things she had said to him.

make up for  
*do something positive to  
correct a mistake*



Paul usually **shrugs off** criticism of his cooking.

shrug off  
*treat something as if  
it is not important*



The two companies have almost reached a deal. They just need to **iron out** a few last details.

iron out  
*solve small problems or details*



Everyone criticized Magda's art when she started, but she **rose above** it and is a successful artist now.

rise above  
*not let criticism or a difficult  
situation affect you badly*





Aa

## 43.3 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



I can count on my sister to comfort me when I'm upset.



Laura objected to Ankita's proposals for a new restaurant.



He pulled her up on her attitude towards the environment.



During the debate, she hit out at her opponents.



Paul usually shrugs off criticism of his cooking.



Carla stood up to the bullies and told them not to be mean.



## 43.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR

A make up for ☐

B fight back ☐

C hit out at ☒

D go along with ☐

E shoot down ☐

F iron out ☐

G side with ☐

H object to ☐

I frown on ☐

Aa

## 43.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Paulina always sides ~~up~~ / **with** / ~~on~~ our boss. It's so irritating!

- 1 Everyone agrees **with** / **on** / **for** John that Sian should get the job.
- 2 Everyone criticized Magda's art, but she rose **above** / **for** / **on** it and is a successful artist now.
- 3 The workers are pushing **up for** / **back on** / **out of** the management's policies.
- 4 They disagreed **with** / **of** / **on** each other about what color to paint the kitchen.



## 43.6 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

Paul usually shrugs off criticism of his cooking.

Paul listens to criticism. ☐

Paul doesn't listen to criticism. ☒

Criticism helps Paul improve. ☐

① My aunt frowns on people wearing shoes indoors.

My aunt disapproves. ☐

My aunt wears shoes indoors. ☐

My aunt doesn't wear shoes at all. ☐

② Paulina always sides with our boss.

Paulina never supports our boss. ☐

Paulina doesn't like our boss. ☐

Paulina always supports our boss. ☐

③ Laura objected to Ankita's proposals.

Laura liked Ankita's proposals. ☐

Laura supported Ankita's proposals. ☐

Laura opposed Ankita's proposals. ☐

④ Carla stood up to the bullies.

Carla did not defend herself. ☐

Carla defended herself. ☐

Carla was one of the bullies. ☐

⑤ They just need to iron out a few last details.

They need to solve small problems. ☐

They need to create problems. ☐

They need to avoid problems. ☐

## 43.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

My idea was **shot up** by the panel before I had a chance to explain it to them.

My idea was shot down by the panel before I had a chance to explain it to them.



① I think Sonia **has** something **about** me. She never wants to talk to me.



② Martin and Simon **disagreed on** each other about what color to paint the kitchen.



③ Our local representative has **come out under** the plans for a new housing development.



④ Donna bought her brother some chocolates to **make up by** the things she had said to him.



⑤ Terry's colleagues always make fun of his shirts, but he just **laughs it over**.



# 44 Opinions and arguments

## 44.1 OFFERING OPINIONS

Sorry, I'm not sure what you're **getting at**.

**get at**  
imply, try to say something indirectly



Anetta is always **speaking out** about environmental issues.

**speak out**  
give your opinion publicly



The professor **weighed in** on the debate about the new power station.

**weigh in**  
add your opinion to an ongoing discussion



The manager **laid into** the players after they lost another match.

**lay into**  
criticize someone in an angry way



Andy **lashed out at** someone who dropped litter in the street.

**lash out (at)**  
criticize someone in an angry way



Farah makes sure to **base** all her arguments **on** facts.

**base on**  
use facts or arguments to support your opinion



## 44.2 JOINING ARGUMENTS

Only one of my colleagues **stuck up for** me when my boss criticized my work.

**stick up for**  
defend someone or something



When Dad accused me of lying, Jo **backed me up** and told him I was telling the truth.

**back up**  
give someone support by agreeing with them



Moira tried to **drag** Phil **into** her argument with the chef.

**drag into**  
make someone join in an argument against their will



Phil, however, preferred to **stay out of** it.

**stay out of**  
avoid becoming involved in an argument



See also:

back up 12 climb down 19 fall out 49  
make up 41, 52 take back 10, 16, 55

## 44.3 SURRENDERING, COMPROMISE, AND RECONCILIATION

Ben and Gus finally **made up** after their argument.

make up (with)  
become friends again



They had **fallen out** when they both applied for the same job.

fall out (with)  
have a disagreement with someone

Sam wanted his waiters to dress as hot dogs. He **backed down** when they threatened to quit.

back down  
withdraw a demand or  
admit you were wrong



When Pete showed Martin the facts, Martin had to **climb down** and admit he was wrong.

climb down (UK)  
admit you are wrong (after  
some resistance)



Kirsten had been threatening to fire Imran, but she **backed off** when he promised to work harder.

back off  
withdraw a threat



Arun and Les **patched things up** after they had an argument.

patch up  
sort out your differences and  
become friends again



I'm sorry I said I didn't like your dress, Katie. I **take it back**.

take back  
admit that what you said was wrong



I'm trying to **smooth things over** with Anna, so I bought her some flowers.

smooth over (with)  
resolve a problem or disagreement



Craig's parents finally **caved in** and bought him a games console.

cave in  
agree to something (after a lot  
of resistance)



Ed hated Carla's new book, but he **watered down** his opinion when he wrote his review.

water down  
make an opinion or proposal  
less strong



## 44.4 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

make someone join in an argument against their will

speak out

1 withdraw a threat

take back

2 give your opinion publicly

drag into

3 admit that what you said was wrong

stay out of

4 avoid becoming involved in an argument

base on

5 sort out your differences and become friends again

stick up for

6 use facts or arguments to support your opinion

back off

7 defend someone or something

patch up



## 44.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



Anetta is always speaking out about environmental issues.

☐

Arun and Les patched things up after they had an argument.

☐

Ed hated Carla's new book, but he watered down his opinion in his review.

1



I'm sorry I said I didn't like your dress, Katie. I take it back.

☐

Farah makes sure to base all her arguments on facts.

☐

The professor weighed in on the debate about the new power station.

☐



Aa

## 44.6 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

resolve a problem or disagreement

smooth over (with)



4 defend someone or something



1 withdraw a threat



5 have a disagreement with someone



2 avoid becoming involved in an argument



6 criticize someone in an angry way



3 give someone support by agreeing with them



7 withdraw a demand or admit you were wrong



back up

lash out (at)

stick up for

back off

back down

stay out of

~~smooth over (with)~~

fall out (with)

Aa

## 44.7 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE WORDS IN THE PANEL TO CREATE PHRASAL VERBS

Ben and Gus finally made up after their argument.

1 When Pete showed Martin the facts, Martin had to climb and admit he was wrong.

2 The manager laid the players after they lost another match.

3 They had fallen when they both applied for the same job.

4 Craig's parents finally caved and bought him a games console.

5 Sorry, I'm not sure what you're getting.

out

in

~~up~~

down

at

into

# 45 Emotions

## 45.1 POSITIVE EMOTIONS

The children **burst out** laughing when the clown pretended to fall over.

**burst out**  
suddenly begin (laughing or crying)



Craig had had a bad day at work, but watching a funny movie **cheered him up**.

**cheer up**  
become happier or make someone feel happier



Yana was upset, but she **brightened up** when I bought her some tickets to a concert.

**brighten up**  
begin to feel happier



Anna hadn't been feeling great, but she **perked up** after a cup of tea and a cookie.

**perk up**  
become happier or more lively



## 45.2 DEALING WITH EMOTIONS

When Linda feels stressed, she listens to music to help her **calm down**.

**calm down**  
become calmer



I've been **checking up on** Andrei every day since he lost his job. He's been very upset.

**check up on**  
check that someone is all right



I really **feel for** Kim. She's been so upset since her cat went missing.

**feel for**  
feel sympathy toward someone



Petra's been sulking for days. I wish she'd **snap out of it**.

**snap out of**  
suddenly improve your mood or behavior



Cory's daughter started to **settle down** as he sang her a soothing song.

**settle down**  
become calmer



Jack's a very private person, but he finally **opened up** and told me how he feels.

**open up**  
reveal your true feelings



**See also:**

brighten up 11 calm down 11 get over 32, 53 move on 20  
open up 24 settle down 2 turn to 13, 21, 50 work through 20

Sophie needs to **lighten up**. She's still studying even though it's her birthday today.

**lighten up**

*stop taking everything so seriously*



Hiro's jokes are hilarious. He really **cracks me up**.

**crack up**

*begin laughing or make someone laugh a lot*



Patrick's love of music **shines through** when he starts playing his guitar.

**shine through**

*be clear, easy to see (about a positive emotion or quality)*



Donny's face **lit up** when he saw the presents waiting for him on the table.

**light up**

*suddenly look happy*



Kathy and Jamal broke up last month, but Kathy is still finding it hard to **get over** it.

**get over**

*recover from a bad experience*



Kathy is finally **moving on** after her break up with Jamal last year.

**move on**

*stop thinking about someone or something*



Ed's really **toughened up** after three years in the army.

**toughen up**

*become physically or mentally stronger*



Whenever I'm upset, I know I can **turn to** my sister.

**turn to**

*ask someone for help*



I see a therapist to help me **work through** my problems.

**work through**

*deal with your problems in a systematic way*



My therapist has helped me to **cope with** many of my problems.

**cope with**

*manage, deal with a situation*



Aa

## 45.3 READ THE STATEMENTS AND MARK THE CORRECT MEANING

The children burst out laughing.

They suddenly stopped laughing. ☐They suddenly began laughing. ☒They did not laugh. ☐

- ① Ed's toughened up after joining the army.

Ed's become stronger. ☐Ed's become weaker. ☐Ed's not tough enough. ☐

- ② She has helped me cope with my problems.

She has helped me create problems. ☐She has helped me manage my problems. ☐She has created problems for me. ☐

- ③ Kathy is trying to get over her breakup.

Kathy is trying to recover from it. ☐Kathy is breaking up with someone. ☐Kathy has forgotten her breakup. ☐

- ④ Anna perked up after a cup of tea.

Anna fell asleep. ☐Anna became lazy. ☐Anna became happier. ☐

## 45.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS



burst out

①



settle down

②



shine through

③



light up

④



crack up

⑤



work through

Aa

## 45.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

I see a therapist to help me work ~~under~~ / through / ~~over~~ my problems.

- ① Donny's face lit
- ~~up~~
- / out / off when he saw the presents waiting for him on the table.

- ② Jack's a very private person, but he finally opened
- ~~on~~
- / up / in and told me how he feels.

- ③ When Linda feels stressed, she listens to music to help her calm
- ~~up~~
- / down / out.

- ④ The children burst
- ~~off~~
- / in / out laughing when the clown pretended to fall over.



Aa

## 45.6 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

down

settle

to

Cory's daughter started to settle down as he sang her a soothing song.

up

on

checking

① I've been \_\_\_\_\_ Andrei every day since he lost his job.

up

cheered

him

② Craig had had a bad day at work, but watching a funny movie \_\_\_\_\_.

up

me

cracks

③ Hiro's jokes are hilarious. He really \_\_\_\_\_.

when

brightened

up

④ Yana was upset, but she \_\_\_\_\_ I bought her tickets to a concert.

Aa

## 45.7 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Whenever I'm upset, I know I can **turn around** my sister.Whenever I'm upset, I know I can turn to my sister.① Sophie needs to **lighten down**. She's still studying even though it's her birthday today.② I really **feel about** Kim. She's been so upset since her cat went missing.③ Kathy is finally **moving off** after her breakup with Jamal last year.④ Petra's been sulking for days. I wish she'd **snap in of** it.

# 46 Negative emotions

## 46.1 NEGATIVE EMOTIONS

Chris had been **bottling up** his emotions for a long time.

bottle up

*feel unable to show your emotions to others*



He eventually **broke down** and admitted that he was really upset.

break down

*start to cry*



Andy **fell apart** when I told him that I was moving to another country.

fall apart

*become very emotional, lose control*



This song is so moving. It always **sets me off**.

set off

*make someone start crying*



It really **gets to** me when people leave their trash on the metro.

get to

*irritate or upset someone*



Tamal and Sam **choked up** when the hero died at the end of the movie.

choke up

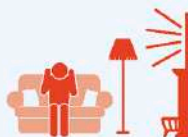
*become emotional or upset*



I'm sick of my neighbors arguing. It's been **getting me down** for months.

get down

*make someone feel depressed*



Bella **welled up** when Pete asked her to marry him.

well up

*have your eyes fill with tears, start to cry*



Stop **taking it out on** me. It's not my fault the weather is awful.

take out on

*behave in a bad way to someone even though it is not their fault*



When Lisa walked onto the stage she **froze up**. She couldn't say anything!

freeze up

*suddenly become unable to communicate*



**See also:**

break down 9, 50 fall apart 49 get down 19, 53  
get to 53 set off 35, 53

Sadie's anger about her boss's rude behavior had been **building up**.

**build up**  
*become bigger or stronger*



It eventually **spilled over**, and Sadie told her how she felt.

**spill over**  
*start to show (in an uncontrollable way)*



Simone's eyes **misted over** as she told me about her childhood in the countryside.

**mist over**  
*(about eyes) fill with tears*



Clare **flew into** a rage when her computer crashed and lost all her work.

**fly into**  
*(about temper, rage, or panic) suddenly become very angry or scared*



My husband **tenses up** whenever I try to talk about money with him.

**tense up**  
*suddenly become tense or anxious*



Troy **freaked out** when he noticed the enormous spider climbing up the wall.

**freak out**  
*become very upset or afraid (informal)*



My grandchildren love to **wind me up**. They're always playing tricks on me.

**wind up (UK)**  
*tease someone, make someone angry*



Work has been **weighing on** me a lot recently.

**weigh on**  
*make someone feel worried or unhappy*



My manager is usually very understanding, but he **blew up** when I told him that I'd left my work laptop on the train.

**blow up**  
*suddenly become very angry*



## 46.2 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- It really gets to me when
- 1 My husband tenses up whenever
  - 2 This song is so moving.
  - 3 Troy freaked out when he noticed
  - 4 Clare flew into a rage when
  - 5 Stop taking it out on me.
  - 6 My grandchildren love to wind me up.
- I try to talk about money with him.  
 her computer crashed and lost all her work.  
 They're always playing tricks on me.  
 people leave their trash on the metro.  
 the enormous spider climbing up the wall.  
 It always sets me off.  
 It's not my fault the weather is awful.



## 46.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE

Simone's eyes misted over as she told me about her childhood in the countryside.



1 Sadie's anger about her boss's rude behavior had been \_\_\_\_\_.



2 Tamal and Sam \_\_\_\_\_ when the hero died at the end of the movie.



3 When Lisa walked onto the stage she \_\_\_\_\_. She couldn't say anything!



4 He eventually \_\_\_\_\_ and admitted that he was really upset.



5 My manager \_\_\_\_\_ when I told him that I'd left my work laptop on the train.





Aa

# 46.4 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL



Andy fell apart when I told him that I was moving to another country.



3 Chris had been \_\_\_\_\_ his emotions for a long time.



1 Bella \_\_\_\_\_ when Pete asked her to marry him.



4 Work has been \_\_\_\_\_ me a lot recently.



2 It eventually \_\_\_\_\_, and Sadie told her how she felt.



5 Clare \_\_\_\_\_ a rage when her computer crashed and lost all her work.

spilled over

flew into

~~fell apart~~

bottling up

welled up

weighing on

Aa

# 46.5 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION, FILLING IN THE MISSING LETTERS

make someone start crying

=

s e t o f f

1 make someone feel depressed

=

g \_\_\_\_\_ d \_\_\_\_\_

2 tease someone, make someone angry

=

w \_\_\_\_\_ u \_\_\_\_\_

3 start to cry

=

b \_\_\_\_\_ d \_\_\_\_\_

4 suddenly become very angry

=

b \_\_\_\_\_ u \_\_\_\_\_

# 47 Making decisions

## 47.1 MAKING DECISIONS

Lisa found it hard to choose a dress, but eventually **decided on** the red one.

**decide on**  
*reach a decision*



After a lot of thought, Rob **went for** the fish instead of the steak.

**go for**  
*choose*



Moving to New Zealand next year **hinges on** us saving enough money.

**hinge on**  
*depend completely on something*



It's so hard to choose! I'm **leaning toward** the red sports car.

**lean toward**  
*be more likely to choose one option than another*



Marie didn't know which new job to accept, so she decided to **sleep on** it.

**sleep on**  
*wait until the next day before making a decision*



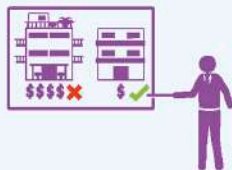
Shona regrets her decision to quit, but she's going to have to **live with** it.

**live with**  
*accept an unpleasant decision or situation*



We loved your plans for the new apartment block. But our decision **came down to** funding.

**come down to**  
*depend on one point*



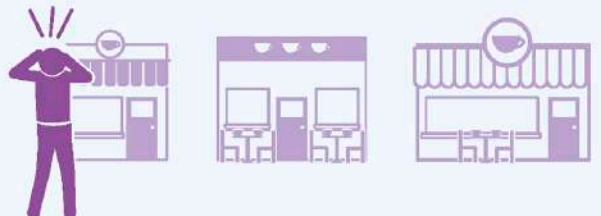
After so many failures, Stephen's **banking on** this new recipe to impress his guests.

**bank on**  
*depend on*



We were sure our café would be a success, but forgot to **factor in** the local competition.

**factor in**  
*take into consideration*



Can you tell us how you  
**settled on** a winner?



**settle on**  
*choose (after thinking about or discussing it)*

We **arrived at** our decision  
after looking carefully at  
each of the paintings.



**arrive at**  
*reach, come to a decision*

The workers wanted a 5% pay raise,  
but eventually **settled for** 3%.

**settle for**  
*agree to something although  
it is not what you first wanted*



Yasmin has been **toying with** the  
idea of getting her hair cut short,  
but has never done it.

**toy with**  
*consider, play with an idea*



Paula **weighed up** her options before  
deciding which camera to buy.

**weigh up**  
*consider positive and negative  
things before making a decision*



Somrita has been **mulling over**  
which candidate to hire.

**mull over**  
*think about something for some  
time before making a decision*



Ahmed's **betting on** it being a hot summer  
this year so he's bought  
an ice-cream van.

**bet on**  
*act on a hope or prediction*



We have **narrowed down** our list  
of potential homes to  
two properties.

**narrow down**  
*reduce the number of choices*



Sonia **opted out** of the boat trip.  
She always gets sea sick.

**opt out (of)**  
*choose not to do something*



Archie **picked out** the toy he  
wanted for his birthday.

**pick out**  
*choose carefully from a group*



## 47.2 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE



Somrita has been mulling ~~in~~ / **over** / ~~on~~ which candidate to hire.



1 Sonia opted **over** / **on** / **out** of the boat trip. She always gets sea sick.



2 Yasmin has been toying **on** / **with** / **to** the idea of getting her hair cut short.



3 The workers wanted a 5% pay raise, but settled **out** / **for** / **in** 3%.



4 Shona regrets her decision to quit, but she's going to have to live **with** / **in** / **on** it.



5 After a lot of thought, Rob went **on** / **out** / **for** the fish instead of the steak.

## 47.3 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

depend completely on something

decide on

1 reach a decision

opt out

2 take into consideration

hinge on

3 think about something before making a decision

pick out

4 choose carefully from a group

factor in

5 choose not to do something

lean toward

6 be more likely to choose one option than another

mull over





#### 47.4 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MARK THE PHRASAL VERBS YOU HEAR



bet on ☒  
bet in ☐



① weigh up ☐  
weigh out ☐



② narrow down ☐  
narrow up ☐



③ pick over ☐  
pick out ☐



④ sleep on ☐  
sleep in ☐



⑤ lean toward ☐  
lean on ☐

### Aa

#### 47.5 FILL IN THE GAPS, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

up

weighed

her

Paula weighed up her options before deciding which camera to buy.

on

us

hinges

① Moving to New Zealand next year \_\_\_\_\_ saving enough money.

on

settled

a

② Can you tell us how you \_\_\_\_\_ winner?

decided

the

on

③ Lisa found it hard to choose a dress, but eventually \_\_\_\_\_ red one.

this

on

banking

④ Stephen is \_\_\_\_\_ new recipe to impress his guests.

# 48 Making mistakes

## 48.1 MAKING MISTAKES

Coralie's graph didn't make sense, so she looked through the data again to see where she'd **slipped up**.

slip up  
make a mistake



Wang thought he'd bought everyone a drink until he noticed he'd **missed Ellie out**.

miss out  
forget to include someone or something in an activity



When Juan missed the penalty, his teammates **rubbed it in** by laughing at him.

rub in  
make someone feel worse about a mistake or failure



I was relying on Selma to bring candles for the cake, but she **let me down**.

let down  
fail to meet someone's expectations or fail to keep a promise



The spelling mistake in Juanita's homework **jumped out at me**.

jump out at  
be obvious to someone



I'll never **live down** the time I dropped Erin's birthday cake in the middle of her party.

live down  
have people forget about an embarrassing mistake you made



Tariq **landed** himself **in** trouble when he forgot to do his homework.

land in  
get into a bad situation



When Chris got home from work, he realized that he had **mixed** his bag **up with** Simon's.

mix up (with)  
accidentally mistake one thing for something else



Enzo went back to the café when he realized he'd **left** his wallet **behind**.

leave behind  
forget to take someone or something with you








I **crossed out** the misspelled word and wrote it again correctly.

cross out  
draw a line or lines through a word





## 48.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A  Enzo went back to the café when he realized he'd left his wallet behind. ☐
- B  Tariq landed himself in trouble when he forgot to do his homework. ☐
- C  When Juan missed the penalty, his teammates rubbed it in by laughing at him. ☒
- D  I crossed out the misspelled word and wrote it again correctly. ☐
- E  The spelling mistake in Juanita's homework jumped out at me. ☐

Aa

## 48.3 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Jimish thought he'd bought everyone a drink until he noticed he'd **missed** Ellie **on**.

*Jimish thought he'd bought everyone a drink until he noticed he'd missed Ellie out.*

- 1 I was relying on Selma to bring candles for the cake, but she **letting** me **down**.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 I'll never **die down** the time I dropped Erin's birthday cake in the middle of her party.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Coralie's graph didn't make sense, so she looked through the data again to see where she'd **slipping up**.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 When Chris got home from work, he realized that he had **mixed** his bag **up for** Simon's.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 The spelling mistake in Juanita's homework **pounced out at** me.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# 49 Accidents and damage

## 49.1 ACCIDENTS

Chrissy accidentally **broke** the handle **off** the antique vase.

**break off**  
remove by force



The hairdresser has completely **messed up** Kira's hair. She's furious about it.

**mess up**  
make something untidy or unattractive,  
do something incorrectly



The old book **came apart** in the librarian's hands.

**come apart**  
fall to pieces



I **banged into** the door while leaving the house.

**bang into**  
hit someone or something by mistake



The dog **knocked over** the plant pot as it chased the cat.

**knock over**  
hit something and make it fall to the ground



Takira **tripped over** one of her son's toys.

**trip over**  
hit something with your foot and  
fall to the ground as a result



## 49.3 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "FALL"

When Omar **fell over** in the backyard, his dad rushed over to help him.

**fall over**  
fall to the ground from  
a standing position



Rodrigo slammed the door so hard that the pictures **fell off** the wall.

**fall off**  
fall to the ground from  
a higher point or surface



The old manor house Andrei wants to buy looks as if it's about to **fall down**.

**fall down**  
be in a very bad state, fall to the ground (about a building)





See also:

break off 30 fall apart 46

fall out 44 wear out 33

## 49.2 DAMAGE

When I got home, I found that the dog had **torn** a cushion **apart**.

tear apart

destroy by tearing into pieces



After her favorite band split up, Jo **tore up** all her posters of them.

tear up

break something into pieces by ripping it



Colin accidentally drove into a tree and **smashed up** his van.

smash up

break something into pieces



The drain was **clogged up** with old leaves, so I had to unblock it.

clog up

become blocked



My son has **worn out** another pair of shoes!

wear out

use something so much that it cannot be used anymore



Jorge **took** the old clock **apart** to fix it.

take apart

disassemble something, separate it into its parts



Sanjay's old car is **falling apart**. He's had it since he was a teenager.

fall apart

break into pieces (because of age or bad quality)



David's wallet **fell out of** his pocket while he was running for the bus.

fall out (of)

fall from an enclosed place



After the leak in the room above, it looked like the ceiling might **fall in**.

fall in

crumble and fall to the ground



Aa

## 49.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT

My son has worn out another pair of shoes!



My son has worn off another pair of shoes!



1 After the leak in the room above, it looked like the ceiling might fall in.



After the leak in the room above, it looked like the ceiling might fall on.



2 The dog knocked out the plant pot as it chased the cat.



The dog knocked over the plant pot as it chased the cat.



3 Jorge took the old clock under to fix it.



Jorge took the old clock apart to fix it.



4 When I got home, I found that the dog had torn a cushion apart.



When I got home, I found that the dog had torn a cushion aside.

49.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN  
NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE  
ORDER YOU HEAR THEMA ☐B 1 ☐C ☐D ☐E ☐F ☐

Aa

49.6 MATCH THE VERBS TO THE  
CORRECT PARTICLES TO MAKE  
PHRASAL VERBS

clog

out

1

smash

over

2

wear

up

3

bang

off

4

trip

up

5

fall

into

6

break

in

# 49.7 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL



David's wallet fell out of his pocket while he was running for the bus.



4 The old book \_\_\_\_\_ in the librarian's hands.



1 I \_\_\_\_\_ the door while leaving the house.



5 The drain was \_\_\_\_\_ with old leaves, so I had to unblock it.



2 Colin accidentally drove into a tree and \_\_\_\_\_ his van.



6 Sanjay's old car is \_\_\_\_\_. He's had it since he was a teenager.



3 Rodrigo slammed the door so hard that the pictures \_\_\_\_\_ the wall.



7 The old manor house Andrei wants to buy looks as if it's about to \_\_\_\_\_.

came apart

fall down

fell off

banged into

falling apart

~~fell out of~~

smashed up

clogged up

# 50 Problems and solutions

## 50.1 PROBLEMS AND SOLUTIONS

Sorry, I'll be home late tonight.  
Something's **come up**.

come up  
happen unexpectedly



The proposals for a new highway have  
**come up against** a lot of local opposition.

come up against  
encounter difficulties



It was very hard for Somrita and her  
friends to relax with their final  
exams **hanging over** them.

hang over  
be a source of worry



While climbing the mountain, we had to  
**contend with** strong winds and heavy rain.

contend with  
deal with difficulties  
or opposition



A number of problems have **cropped up**  
with the new printer. We need to get  
someone to fix it.

crop up  
happen (often unexpectedly)



Writing your thesis is easier if you **break**  
it **down** into small sections.

break down  
make something easier to understand  
by separating it into smaller parts



I thought the event was going to be a  
disaster, but it **turned out** alright.

turn out  
happen differently than expected



Owen is great with customers. He  
**deals with** their complaints fairly,  
and never loses his temper.

deal with  
manage or solve a problem



Ben and I **cleared up** our disagreement  
when we realized it was all just  
a misunderstanding.

clear up  
solve a problem, resolve an argument



Bitna told Danny she was nervous about her  
presentation, but he just **brushed it aside**.

brush aside  
treat a problem as unimportant,  
refuse to take it seriously





Clare and Wei Ting had to **sort out** a problem with their experiment.

**sort out**

*find a solution to a problem*



They stayed up late to **thrash** it out and find a solution.

**thrash out**

*discuss a problem to find a solution*

Sawad's computer crashed, but she **worked around** it by using pen and paper instead.

**work around**

*avoid an obstacle that is stopping you from achieving something*



Kavitha didn't know why her equation was wrong, so she **thought it through** carefully.

**think through**

*consider something methodically*



Anton had run out of green paint, but he managed to **get around** it.

**get around**

*avoid or solve a problem or obstacle*



It's taken me all evening to **figure out** how to turn on this new television.

**figure out**

*find a solution to a problem*



Femmy's thinking of moving to a new part of town, so she went to **check out** the area.

**check out**

*find out if someone or something is acceptable*



One of the pipes was leaking, so we **called in** a plumber to fix it.

**call in**

*ask a skilled person to deal with a problem for you*



Whenever Gitanjali has a problem, she **turns to** her grandmother for advice.

**turn to**

*go to someone for help or advice*





## 50.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☒



C ☐



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

### Aa

## 50.3 MATCH UP THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES THAT MEAN THE SAME THING

Clare and Wei Ting had to sort out a problem with their experiment.

While climbing the mountain, we had to deal with strong winds and heavy rain.

1 Whenever Gitanjali has a problem, she turns to her grandmother for advice.

Clare and Wei Ting had to find a solution to a problem with their experiment.

2 While climbing the mountain, we had to contend with strong winds and heavy rain.

It's taken me all evening to find out how to turn on this new television.

3 The proposals for a new highway have come up against a lot of local opposition.

One of the pipes was leaking, so we asked a plumber to fix it.

4 One of the pipes was leaking, so we called in a plumber to fix it.

Whenever Gitanjali has a problem, she goes to her grandmother for advice.

5 Writing your thesis is easier if you break it down into small sections.

The proposals for a new highway have encountered a lot of local opposition.

6 It's taken me all evening to figure out how to turn on this new television.

Writing your thesis is easier if you separate it into small sections.

Aa

## 50.4 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

## SEPARABLE

---



---



---



---

## INSEPARABLE

---



---



---



---

come up against

break down

crop up

thrash out

brush aside

get around

think through

~~turn to~~

Aa

## 50.5 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL UNDER THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

avoid or solve a problem or obstacle

get around

④ solve a problem, resolve an argument



① happen differently than expected



⑤ treat a problem as unimportant, refuse to take it seriously



② consider something methodically



⑥ ask a skilled person to deal with a problem for you



③ find a solution to a problem



⑦ find out if someone or something is acceptable



sort out

check out

think through

brush aside

turn out

~~get around~~

clear up

thrash out

# 51 Secrets and surprises

## 51.1 SECRETS

Jessica has been **keeping** the name of her new boyfriend **from** me.

keep from  
not tell someone something



Paolo has prepared a new sculpture for the exhibition. I've asked him what it is, but he's not **giving** anything **away**!

give away  
reveal a secret



I only **cottoned onto** the fact that Lisa and Pete were dating when I saw them at the ice rink together.

cotton on(to) (UK)  
begin to understand or realize something



## 51.2 SURPRISES

We were all eating our dinner when the dog **burst into** the room.

burst in(to)  
enter a room or building suddenly



I was **bowed over** when Nadia announced that she had been accepted into dance school.

bowl over  
amaze or impress someone



Kamal was **blown away** by Jose's account of his adventures in the Amazon.

blow away  
impress very strongly (informal)



Mollie **crept up on** her grandfather while he slept in the garden.

creep up on  
approach someone quietly to surprise them



My best friend **sprang it on** me last night that she's moving to Canada.

spring on  
announce something without warning



The surprising news was a lot to **take in**.

take in  
understand or accept some news or information





**See also:**

blurt out **36** creep up on **15** give away **55**  
keep from **33** slip out **5** take in **6, 55**

My little sister **blurted out** to Dad that we'd organized a surprise party for him. She can't keep a secret.

**blurt out**

*say something suddenly, without thinking about it*



I didn't mean to tell the team that it was your birthday. It just **slipped out**.

**slip out**

*say something by mistake*



The movie star tried to **hush up** the fact that she had a new boyfriend.

**hush up**

*conceal the truth*



Clara can't believe she passed her medical exams. It's going to take a while for it to **sink in**.

**sink in**

*be fully understood*



My daughter often pretends to be a dinosaur. We all have to **play along** with her.

**play along**

*pretend something is true or that you believe in something*



People have **woken up to** the fact that we need to look after the environment.

**wake up to**

*realize the importance of something*



While I was on vacation in Venice, I **bumped into** one of my cousins. I couldn't believe it.

**bump into**

*meet someone without expecting it*



I was shopping at the antiques market when I **stumbled upon** a valuable necklace.

**stumble upon**

*find by chance*



I was **taken aback** when Tia and Juan told me they were getting married.

**take aback**

*surprise or shock someone*



Aa

## 51.3 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

Kamal was blown away by Jose's

that it was your birthday. It just slipped out.

1 I didn't mean to tell the team

that she had been accepted into dance school.

2 The movie star tried to hush up

account of his adventures in the Amazon.

3 Jessica has been keeping

while he slept in the garden.

4 I was bowled over when Nadia announced





the fact that she had a new boyfriend.

5 Mollie crept up on her grandfather

the name of her new boyfriend from me.

Aa

## 51.4 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

We were all eating our dinner when the dog burst ~~onto~~ / ~~into~~ / ~~through~~ the room.1  Clara can't believe she passed her exams. It's going to take a while for it to sink ~~down~~ / ~~of~~ / ~~in~~.2  People have woken ~~for~~ / ~~up~~ / ~~of~~ to the fact that we need to look after the environment.3  I was shopping at the antiques market when I stumbled ~~over~~ / ~~upon~~ / ~~in~~ a valuable necklace.4  My best friend ~~sprang~~ / ~~jumped~~ / ~~splashed~~ it on me last night that she's moving to Canada.5  I was taken ~~about~~ / ~~aback~~ / ~~around~~ when Tia and Juan told me they were getting married.



### 51.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

Diagram illustrating the matching exercise:

- Image 1: A group of people playing together. (play along)
- Image 2: A person shouting or speaking loudly. (blurt out)
- Image 3: A person bumping into another person. (bump into)
- Image 4: A person giving something away. (give away)

Phrasal verbs provided:

- play along
- blurt out
- cotton onto
- give away
- bump into

Aa

### 51.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, PUTTING THE WORDS IN THE CORRECT ORDER

surprising lot was The to take in. news a

*The surprising news was a lot to take in.*

a the stumbled valuable market. I necklace upon at antiques

1 \_\_\_\_\_

keeping Jessica the me. new has name boyfriend her been of from

2 \_\_\_\_\_

on grandfather crept her up in slept he the Mollie while garden.

3 \_\_\_\_\_

room. the We our were dinner burst into eating when dog the

4 \_\_\_\_\_

## 52.1 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "COME"

Hetty's career as a musician **came about** after a producer saw her performing.

**come about**  
happen (often without planning)



When I tried to log into my account, a message **came up** saying that my account had been blocked.

**come up**  
appear (on screen)



Staying in touch with friends became much easier once the internet **came along**.

**come along**  
appear, become available,  
start to exist



Ben and Eleanor **came out of** the toy store with presents for their grandchildren.

**come out (of)**  
leave a room, building, or  
enclosed space



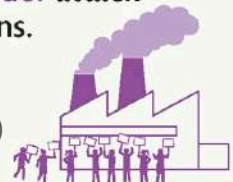
Natsuo **came across** the room to speak to us.

**come across**  
move across a room, space,  
country, etc.



The company has **come under** attack for its high carbon emissions.

**come under**  
experience something negative  
(such as criticism, threat, or attack)



Derek sat down in front of the TV when the ten o'clock news **came on**.

**come on**  
start (about a TV program)



My daughter's still waiting for her results to **come through**. She's so nervous.

**come through**  
arrive (about news or information)



No matter how much we clean it, this graffiti won't **come off** the wall.

**come off**  
be removed





See also: come across 1, 39 come along 5, 31 come off 6, 26  
 come on 27, 56 come out (of) 6 come up 16, 36, 50 do up 52  
 make for 37 make out 41 make up 41, 44

## 52.2 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "MAKE"

Lots of talented people **make up** our circus's team of acrobats.

**make up**  
 constitute, form something



Luanne struggled to **make out** what the train conductor was saying.

**make out**  
 manage to see, hear, or understand



We were about to eat dinner when the dog **made off with** the leg of lamb.

**make off with**  
 escape with something



With hot weather expected, thousands of tourists **made for** the coast.

**make for**  
 go toward a place



When I asked Kim what she **made of** Toshi's new novel, she said she loved it.

**make of**  
 have an opinion of something



## 52.3 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "DO"

Emily is **doing up** her house at the moment. It's going to look great when she's finished.

**do up**  
 improve, renovate



With so many people using bank cards, we may be able to **do away with** cash in the future.

**do away with**  
 abolish, no longer need or use



The council needs to decide what it's going to **do about** the city's litter problem.

**do about**  
 do something to solve a problem



Riya was very disappointed with her wedding cake, and insisted it be **done over**.

**do over (US)**  
 do something again









## 52.4 MATCH THE PHRASAL VERBS TO THE CORRECT DEFINITIONS

	do up	be removed
1	come off	have an opinion of something
2	come up	improve, renovate
3	do about	appear (on screen)
4	make of	escape with something
5	make for	abolish, no longer need or use
6	make off with	go toward a place
7	do away with	do something to solve a problem



## 52.5 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE SENTENCES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM

- A  Natsuo came across the room to speak to us. ☐
- B  We were about to eat dinner when the dog made off with the leg of lamb. ☐
- C  Ben and Eleanor came out of the toy store with presents for their grandchildren. ☒ 1
- D  My daughter's still waiting for her results to come through. She's so nervous. ☐
- E  When I asked Kim what she made of Toshi's new novel, she said she loved it. ☐
- F  Staying in touch with friends became much easier once the internet came along. ☐

## Aa 52.6 FILL IN THE GAPS USING THE PHRASAL VERBS IN THE PANEL

The company has come under attack for its high carbon emissions.

- ① Riya was disappointed with her wedding cake, and insisted it be \_\_\_\_\_.
- ② With hot weather expected, thousands of tourists \_\_\_\_\_ the coast.
- ③ Lots of talented people \_\_\_\_\_ our circus's team of acrobats.
- ④ Natsuo \_\_\_\_\_ the room to speak to us.
- ⑤ The council has to decide what it's going to \_\_\_\_\_ the litter problem.
- ⑥ Luanne struggled to \_\_\_\_\_ what the train conductor was saying.
- ⑦ No matter how much we clean it, this graffiti won't \_\_\_\_\_ the wall.

do about  
came across  
made for  
come under  
make out  
make up  
come off  
done over

## Aa 52.7 LOOK AT THE PICTURES AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES USING PHRASAL VERBS



Emily is doing up her house at the moment.  
It's going to look great when she's finished.



- ① Hetty's career as a musician \_\_\_\_\_ after a producer saw her performing.



- ② Derek sat down in front of the TV when the ten o'clock news \_\_\_\_\_.



- ③ Luanne struggled to \_\_\_\_\_ what the train conductor was saying.



- ④ When I tried to log in, a message \_\_\_\_\_ saying that my account had been blocked.



- ⑤ Lots of talented people \_\_\_\_\_ our circus's team of acrobats.

# 53 “Get” and “set”

## 53.1 PHRASAL VERBS WITH “GET”

Claude **got up from** his chair and went to make some more tea.

**get up (from)**  
stand up (from sitting)



Let's just clean the kitchen now and **get it over with**.

**get over with**  
complete a task you don't want to do



It's almost eleven o'clock. We should **get down to** work.

**get down to**  
start to focus on a task



Can you help me **get** the shopping **in**, please?

**get in**  
bring something inside



Chad's oven had broken, but he **got around** it by using the microwave instead.

**get around**  
avoid an obstacle, deal with a problem



Cheryl's dog keeps **getting over** the fence into the neighbor's backyard.

**get over**  
find a way over an obstacle



## 53.2 PHRASAL VERBS WITH “SET”

Harry burned the dinner and **set off** the smoke detector.

**set off**  
activate, cause something to start happening



As Martin walked home late at night, fear began to **set in**.

**set in**  
begin (about something unpleasant that may last a long time)



The bad weather has **set us back** by two weeks. We won't finish building the bridge until November.

**set back**  
cost time, money, or progress





See also: get around 35, 50 get down 19, 46 get in 8, 9  
 get out 9, 56 get over 32, 45 get to 46 get together 5  
 get up 8 set off 35, 46 set out 23, 35 set up 3, 12

Lee **got** his fishing rod **out of** the garage and carried it to his car.

get out (of)  
 remove something (from  
 a bag, box, room, etc.)



Glen climbed the ladder to **get** the cat **down from** the tree.

get down (from)  
 retrieve something from a higher position



As soon as we **got to** the ski resort, we went straight to the slopes.

get to  
 arrive at



Ramona always **gets** her message **across**, even when she's explaining complicated scientific theories.

get across  
 communicate a message successfully



Before accusing Simon, the police had to **get their facts together**.

get together  
 organize information or belongings



After Gia was rude to me, I **got back at** her by not inviting her to my wedding.

get back at  
 get revenge on somebody



Lee's speed **sets** him **apart from** the other players in the tournament.

set apart (from)  
 make someone or something  
 special in comparison to others



After leaving school, Romesh **set up** his own business selling surfboards.

set up  
 start (a business)



The security guard threatened to **set** his dog **on** us if we didn't leave immediately.

set on  
 order someone or something  
 to attack someone



Mary **set out** all her qualifications and experience in her resume.

set out  
 explain information in detail





### 53.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND COMPLETE THE SENTENCES THAT DESCRIBE EACH PICTURE



Claude got up from his chair and went to make some more tea.

1



Cheryl's dog keeps \_\_\_\_\_ the fence into the neighbor's backyard.

2



Harry burned the dinner and \_\_\_\_\_ the smoke detector.

3



As Martin walked home late at night, fear began to \_\_\_\_\_.

4



It's almost eleven o'clock. We should \_\_\_\_\_ work.

5



Mary \_\_\_\_\_ all her qualifications and experience in her resume.

6



Lee's speed \_\_\_\_\_ the other players in the tournament.

## Aa

### 53.4 WRITE THE PHRASAL VERBS FROM THE PANEL IN THE CORRECT GROUPS

#### SEPARABLE

---

---

---

---

#### INSEPARABLE

get around

---

---

---

---

get up (from)   set back   get to   set on   ~~get around~~   get across   set in   get together

Aa

## 53.5 MATCH THE DEFINITIONS TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

avoid an obstacle, deal with a problem

get to

1 order someone or something to attack someone

get across

2 arrive at

get around

3 cost time, money, or progress

set on

4 get revenge on somebody

get together

5 communicate a message successfully

set back

6 organize information or belongings

set up

7 start (a business)

get back at

Aa

## 53.6 REWRITE THE SENTENCES, CORRECTING THE ERRORS

Let's just clean the kitchen now and **set it over with**.*Let's just clean the kitchen now and get it over with.*1 Lee **got** his fishing rod **up of** the garage and carried it to his car.2 The security guard threatened to **get** his dog **on** us if we didn't leave immediately.3 Can you help me **got** the shopping **in**, please?4 Before accusing Simon, the police had to **get** their facts **up**.5 As soon as we **gotten to** the ski resort, we went straight to the slopes.

## 54.1 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "GO"

How are you going to **go about** fixing this car?

**go about**

*start tackling a problem or task*



As soon as I realized Orla had forgotten her bag, I **went after** her.

**go after**

*follow or chase someone*



James **went over** the company's accounts to check for mistakes.

**go over**

*review*



My daughter **goes to** ballet classes every Saturday morning.

**go to**

*regularly attend*



After I got back from the dentist, it took a couple of hours for the pain to **go away**.

**go away**

*disappear*



Michelle and I **go back** years. I've known her since kindergarten.

**go back**

*know someone for a long time*



Buying water in plastic bottles **goes against** my principles.

**go against**

*be the opposite of what you wish or believe*



The children watched the hot-air balloon slowly **go up** into the air.

**go up**

*move from a lower position to a higher one*



A team of firefighters **went into** the burning building.

**go in(to)**

*enter a building, room, or enclosed space*



As soon as the teacher had **gone out** of the room, the children began misbehaving.

**go out (of)**

*leave a room, building, or enclosed space*





**See also:**

go ahead **56** go around **32** go away **56** go back **16, 35** go by **15**  
go down **12, 32** go for **47** go out **3, 5, 27** go through **19**

Help yourself to some cakes.  
There are enough to **go around**.

go around  
*be enough for everyone*



Malachai **went through** a period of unhappiness after his dog died.

go through  
*experience something*



There's something **going on** next door.  
I can hear loud music.

go on  
*happen*



Parents often have to **go without** sleep when they have a new baby.

go without  
*live without something*



Cath couldn't find the recipe, so she had to make it up as she **went along**.

go along  
*continue to do something*



My new trainer is called Zachariah, though he usually **goes by** Zac.

go by  
*be called by a certain name*



Kelly's decided to **go for** the job at the software company. It's very well paid.

go for  
*try to achieve something*



All the money we make today will **go toward** funding the new school library.

go toward  
*contribute to*



Rob and I sat on the beach watching the sun **go down**.

go down  
*move from a higher position to a lower one*



Even though it was a cloudy day, Ramon decided to **go ahead with** the picnic.

go ahead (with)  
*decide to do something (after consideration or official approval)*



## 54.2 MATCH UP THE PAIRS OF SENTENCES THAT MEAN THE SAME THING

As soon as the teacher had gone out of the room, the children began misbehaving.

After I got back from the dentist, it took a couple of hours for the pain to disappear.

1 My daughter goes to ballet classes every Saturday morning.

As soon as the teacher had left the room, the children began misbehaving.

2 There's something going on next door. I can hear loud music.

Help yourself to some cakes. There are enough for everyone.

3 James went over the company's accounts to check for mistakes.

My daughter attends ballet classes every Saturday morning.

4 Help yourself to some cakes. There are enough to go around.

Malachai experienced a period of unhappiness after his dog died.

5 Malachai went through a period of unhappiness after his dog died.

James reviewed the company's accounts to check for mistakes.

6 After I got back from the dentist, it took a couple of hours for the pain to go away.

There's something happening next door. I can hear loud music.



## 54.3 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO, THEN NUMBER THE PICTURES IN THE ORDER YOU HEAR THEM



A ☐



B ☒ 1



C ☐



D ☐



E ☐



F ☐



G ☐



H ☐

## 54.4 MARK THE SENTENCES THAT ARE CORRECT



How are you going to go about fixing this car?



How are you going to go above fixing this car?



1



Michelle and I go back years. I've known her since kindergarten.



Michelle and I go up years. I've known her since kindergarten.



2



My new trainer is called Zachariah, though he usually goes by Zac.



My new trainer is called Zachariah, though he usually went by Zac.



3



Buying water in plastic bottles goes against my principles.



Buying water in plastic bottles going against my principles.



4



As soon as I realized Orla had forgotten her bag, I went after her.



As soon as I realized Orla had forgotten her bag, I went before her.



5



The children watched the hot-air balloon slowly went up into the air.



The children watched the hot-air balloon slowly go up into the air.



## 54.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Cath couldn't find the recipe, so she had to make it up as she went ~~through~~ / ~~on~~ / along.

- 1 Parents often have to ~~leave~~ / ~~go~~ / ~~arrive~~ without sleep when they have a new baby.
- 2 Help yourself to some cakes. There are enough to go ~~among~~ / ~~over~~ / ~~around~~.
- 3 Kelly's decided to go ~~for~~ / ~~on~~ / ~~to~~ the job at the software company. It's very well paid.
- 4 Rob and I sat on the beach watching the sun ~~set~~ / ~~go~~ / ~~back~~ down.
- 5 A team of firefighters went ~~onto~~ / ~~down~~ / ~~into~~ the burning building.
- 6 All the money we make today will go ~~forward~~ / ~~toward~~ / ~~into~~ funding the new school library.
- 7 Even though it was a cloudy day, Ramon decided to go ~~about~~ / ~~ahead~~ / ~~around~~ with the picnic.



## 55.1 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "PUT"

Liam finished decorating the cake and **put it on** a stand.

**put on**

*place something onto a surface*



The deliveryman **put** the parcel **down** before knocking on the door.

**put down**

*place something you have been carrying on the ground or a surface*



Angela is upset about her divorce, but she's trying to **put it behind** her.

**put behind**

*forget about a bad experience*



Can you please be quiet? You're **putting me off**!

**put off**

*distract someone from focusing*



The fitness instructor **put** the class **through** a tough training program.

**put through**

*make someone experience something*



Forecasters have **put out** a weather warning for heavy rain and strong winds.

**put out**

*broadcast important information*



Cassie followed the instructions carefully to **put** her new wardrobe **together**.

**put together**

*build, assemble*



Scarlett had to **put up with** busy trains every day on her way to work.

**put up with**

*tolerate something unpleasant*



## 55.3 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "GIVE"

Martha played the violin as a child, but **gave it up** when she left school.

**give up**

*stop doing something*



The café on the high street is **giving out** free samples of their new cakes.

**give out**

*give something to people for free*





See also: give away 51 give up 26 put off 23 put on 6, 27, 41  
 put through 38 take away 25, 30 take back 10, 16, 44  
 take in 6, 51 take off 5, 6, 9, 22 take up 15, 31

## 55.2 PHRASAL VERBS WITH "TAKE"

Jim's mother asked him to **take** his younger brother **along** to the skate park.

**take along (to)**

*take someone or something with you*



The waste collectors came to **take away** the bags of trash.

**take away**

*remove something*



Seeing the black clouds, Tim went outside to **take** the washing **in**.

**take in**

*carry something inside*



Eliza has really **taken to** golf. She never thought she'd like it.

**take to**

*start to like*



Amara **took** her mother **aside** to tell her that she was pregnant.

**take aside**

*take someone to a quieter place to tell them something in private*



Denise **took** a jar **down from** the shelf to give her dog a biscuit.

**take down (from)**

*get something from a higher place*



The police stopped the criminal and **took** the stolen money **off** him.

**take off**

*remove something from someone*



The elevator **took** James **up to** the top floor of the building.

**take up (to)**

*take someone or something to a higher level*



My son had been asking for an ice cream all day. I finally **gave in** and bought him one.

**give in**

*agree to do something after some resistance*



Tom's moving to a smaller apartment so he's **giving away** some of his belongings.

**give away**

*give something to someone for free (rather than selling it)*



Aa

## 55.4 MATCH THE PICTURES TO THE CORRECT SENTENCES



The police stopped the criminal, and took the stolen money off him.



The elevator took James up to the top floor of the building.



Martha played the violin as a child, but gave it up when she left school.



Cassie followed the instructions carefully to put her new wardrobe together.



Liam finished decorating the cake and put it on a stand.



The waste collectors came to take away the bags of trash.

Aa

## 55.5 CROSS OUT THE INCORRECT WORDS IN EACH SENTENCE

Tom's moving to a smaller apartment so he's giving **away** / ~~over~~ / ~~through~~ some of his belongings.

1 The café on the high street is **taking** / **putting** / **giving** out samples of their new range of cookies.

2 Denise **got** / **took** / **put** a jar down from the shelf to give her dog a biscuit.

3 Angela is upset about her divorce, but she's trying to **put** / **take** / **give** it behind her.

4 Seeing the black clouds, Tim went outside to take the washing **on** / **off** / **in**.

5 My son had been asking for an ice cream all day. I finally **took** / **gave** / **put** in and bought him one.

## 55.6 MATCH THE BEGINNINGS OF THE SENTENCES TO THE CORRECT ENDINGS

- |   |                                       |  |
|---|---------------------------------------|--|
|   | The deliveryman put the parcel        | out free samples of their new cakes.         |
| 1 | The fitness instructor put the class  | busy trains every day on her way to work.    |
| 2 | Scarlett had to put up with           | down before knocking on the door.            |
| 3 | Angela is upset about her divorce,    | to tell her that she was pregnant.           |
| 4 | Amara took her mother aside           | She never thought she'd like it.             |
| 5 | The café on the high street is giving | his younger brother along to the skate park. |
| 6 | Eliza has really taken to golf.       | but she's trying to put it behind her.       |
| 7 | Jim's mother asked him to take        | through a tough training program.            |



## 55.7 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND WRITE THE SENTENCES BELOW THE IMAGES



*Can you please be quiet?  
You're putting me off!*



1 \_\_\_\_\_



2 \_\_\_\_\_



3 \_\_\_\_\_



4 \_\_\_\_\_



5 \_\_\_\_\_

See also:

come in 4 come on 27, 52 get out 9, 53  
go ahead 54 go away 54

## 56.1 EXCLAMATIONS

**Go away!**go away  
tell someone or something to  
leave you alone**Come on!**come on  
tell someone or something to  
follow you or to move faster**Get out!**get out  
tell someone to leave a room  
in an angry way**Look out!**look out  
warn someone about something  
they haven't noticed yet**Are you ready to start?****Yes, bring it on!**bring it on  
said when you're confident and  
ready to start doing something**Hey Vi, can I ask you something?****Sure, fire away.**fire away  
let someone know it is fine  
for them to start talking**I think I've just won the lottery!****Come off it!**come off it  
said to express disbelief at  
something someone has said**Hi Carolina! Come in.**come in  
said when inviting someone  
into a room or building  
(especially your own home)**Do you mind if I sit here?****Go ahead.**go ahead  
said when giving someone permission  
to do something





## 56.2 LISTEN TO THE AUDIO AND MATCH THE IMAGES TO THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERBS

Illustrations and phrasal verbs for matching:

- Illustration 1: A person at a desk with a computer, another person standing nearby.
- Illustration 2: A person walking through a doorway.
- Illustration 3: A person on a bicycle, another person standing nearby.
- Illustration 4: A person on a train platform, another person standing nearby.

Phrasal verbs:

- come in
- get out
- fire away
- go ahead
- bring it on

Aa

## 56.3 WRITE THE CORRECT PHRASAL VERB NEXT TO ITS DEFINITION

Definitions and matching lines:

- said to express disbelief at something someone has said = come off it
- 1 tell someone or something to leave you alone = \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 warn someone about something they haven't noticed yet = \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 said when giving someone permission to do something = \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 let someone know it is fine for them to start talking = \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 said when you're confident and ready to start doing something = \_\_\_\_\_
- 6 tell someone to leave a room in an angry way = \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 tell someone or something to follow you or to move faster = \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 said when inviting someone into a room or building = \_\_\_\_\_

go ahead

come on

look out

come in

go away

get out

~~come off it~~

bring it on

fire away

# R Reference

## R1 VERBS AND PARTICLES

A single verb can be followed by different particles or prepositions, which can change the meaning of the verb. In each of these sentences, "break" carries a sense of separation or damage, but the particles change the meaning into something different each time.

**Maria and Pablo broke up.**

*Maria and Pablo ended their relationship.*



**My car broke down.**

*My car stopped working.*



**The handle broke off the vase.**

*The handle separated from the vase.*



**Ted broke down and started to cry.**

*Ted became very emotional and started to cry.*



**A thief broke into my house.**

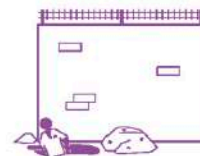
*A thief entered my house illegally.*



**Gustav broke out of prison.**

*Gustav escaped from prison.*

“Break into” and “break out of”  
have opposite meanings.

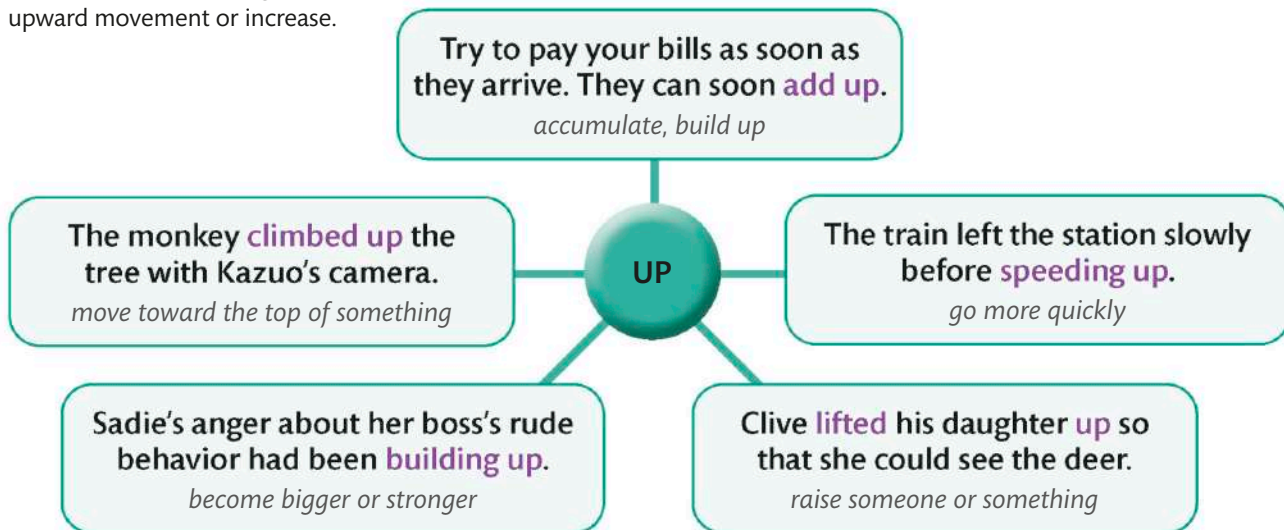


## R2 COMMON PARTICLES

Phrasal verb particles often bestow a similar meaning or range of meanings no matter which verb they are used with.

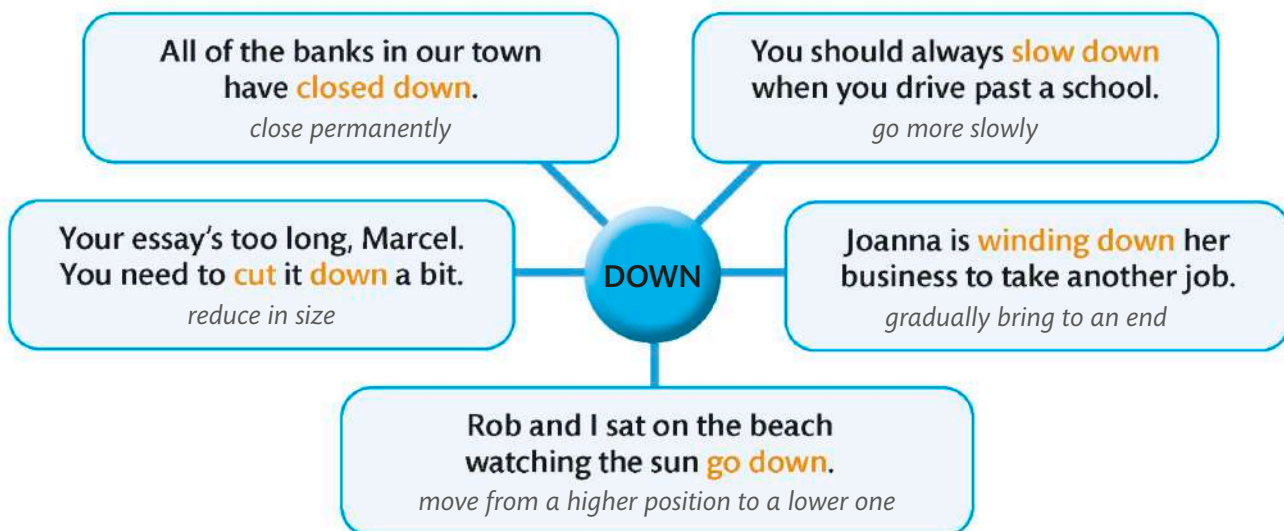
### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "UP"

The particle "up" often gives a phrasal verb a meaning of upward movement or increase.



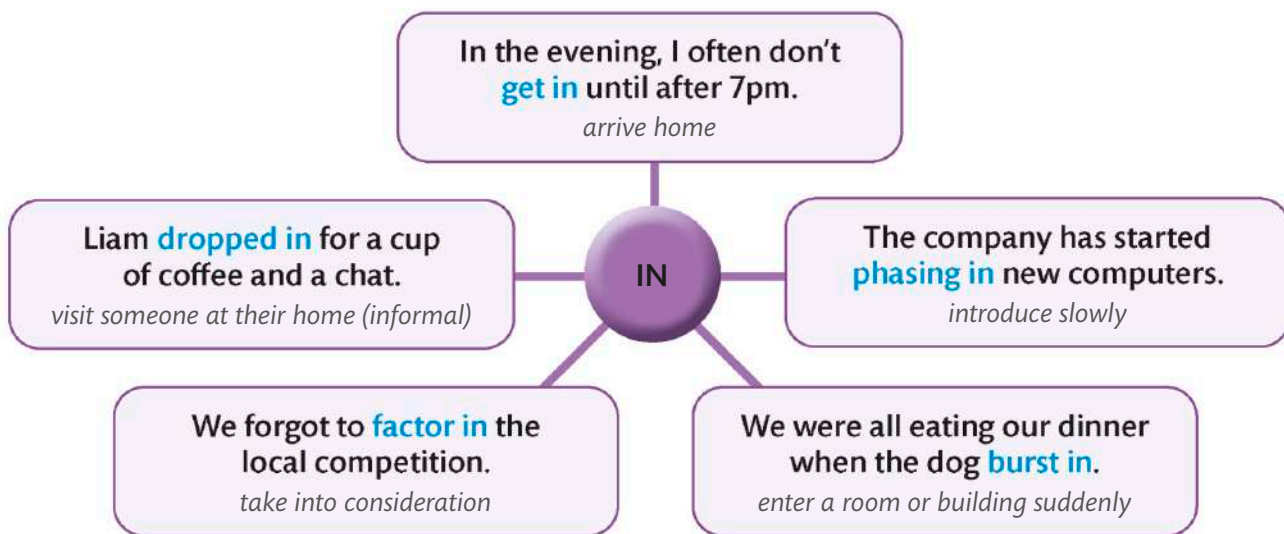
### PHRASAL VERBS WITH "DOWN"

The particle "down" often gives a phrasal verb a meaning of downward movement, reduction, or action coming to a stop.



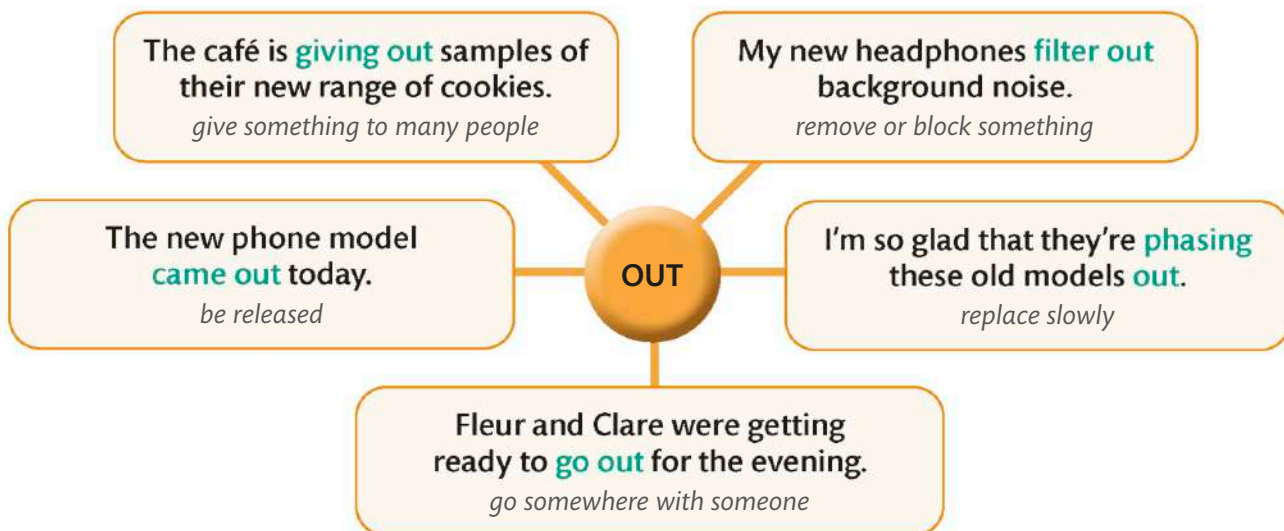
## PHRASAL VERBS WITH "IN"

The particle "in" often gives a phrasal verb a meaning of entering or becoming part of something.



## PHRASAL VERBS WITH "OUT"

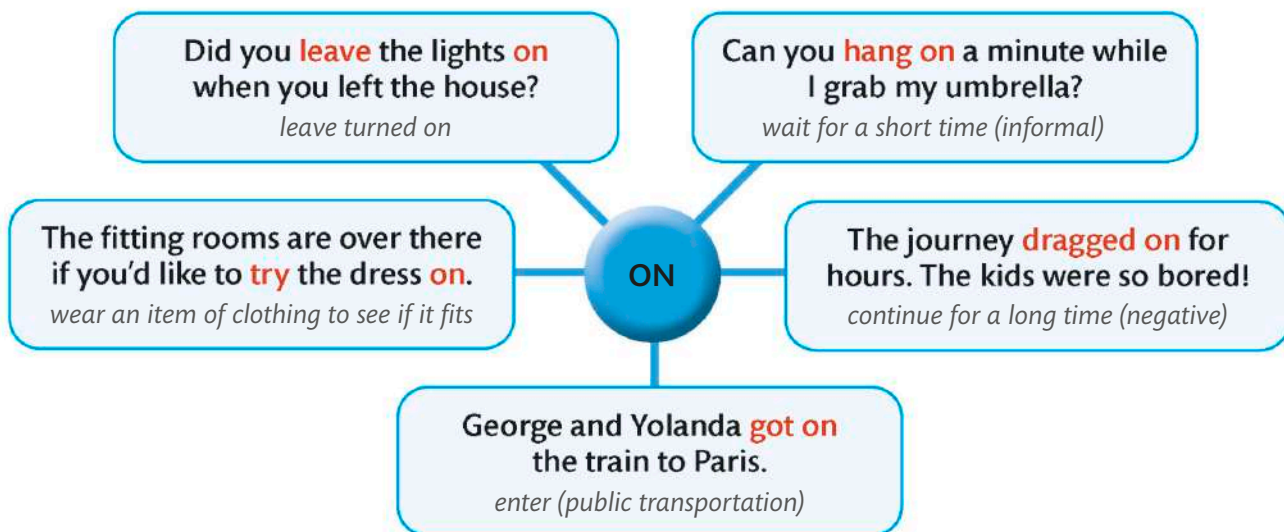
The particle "out" often gives a phrasal verb a meaning of leaving, being released, or being removed.





## PHRASAL VERBS WITH "ON"

The particle "on" often gives a phrasal verb a meaning of continuation or physically being on something.



---

## PHRASAL VERBS WITH "BACK"

The particle "back" often gives a phrasal verb a meaning of returning or doing something again.



### R3 COMMON SEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

Some phrasal verbs can be separated by the object of the verb (see page 14). In these cases, the verb is first, then the object, then the particle. This separation can often be optional, unless the object of a separable phrasal verb is a pronoun, in which case it must go between the verb and the particle.

PHRASAL VERB	DEFINITION	SAMPLE SENTENCE
<b>bring around</b>	persuade someone to support your idea	Al's speech <b>brought</b> many people <b>around</b> to her ideas.
<b>call off</b>	cancel an event	Our manager was busy, so she <b>called</b> our meeting <b>off</b> .
<b>chop up</b>	cut into small pieces	<b>Chop</b> the onions <b>up</b> and then fry them for 10 minutes.
<b>clean up</b>	make tidy again	Can you help me <b>clean</b> the kitchen <b>up</b> please?
<b>cross out</b>	draw a line or lines through a word	I <b>crossed out</b> the wrong word and wrote the right one.
<b>give away</b>	give something to someone for free	Tom is <b>giving</b> some of his furniture <b>away</b> .
<b>give up</b>	stop doing something	Martha used to play the violin, but she <b>gave it up</b> .
<b>hand out</b>	distribute	The teacher <b>handed</b> some worksheets <b>out</b> .
<b>leave out</b>	exclude, not include	To make this recipe vegetarian, <b>leave</b> the meat <b>out</b> .
<b>let in</b>	allow to enter	I <b>let</b> the cat <b>in</b> when it started to rain.
<b>let out</b>	allow to leave	I <b>let</b> the cat <b>out</b> every morning after I've woken up.
<b>make up</b>	invent a story to explain something	I don't believe Gio's story, I think he <b>made it up</b> .
<b>miss out</b>	forget to include someone or something	I thought I'd counted everyone, but I <b>missed you out</b> .
<b>push back</b>	postpone	Claude is unwell, so needs to <b>push</b> our meeting <b>back</b> .
<b>put back</b>	return an object to its original place	Paul and Sally <b>put</b> their furniture <b>back</b> in its place.
<b>put in</b>	place inside	Lisa <b>puts</b> her rabbit <b>in</b> its cage each evening.
<b>put on</b>	place something onto a surface	Liam <b>put</b> the cake <b>on</b> a stand.
<b>take out</b>	take someone on a date	Phil <b>took</b> me <b>out</b> to an expensive restaurant.
<b>take out on</b>	behave in a bad way to someone	Stop <b>taking it out on</b> me. It's not my fault!
<b>throw away</b>	discard, put in the trash	If the chicken smells bad, you should <b>throw it away</b> .
<b>throw on</b>	put a piece of clothing on quickly	Tom <b>threw</b> a jacket <b>on</b> and ran for the bus.
<b>try out</b>	try a new product to see what it is like	Marta couldn't wait to <b>try</b> her new games console <b>out</b> .
<b>turn on</b>	make something start working	If you're bored, <b>turn</b> the television <b>on</b> .
<b>write down</b>	record information by writing it	I <b>wrote</b> a few ideas <b>down</b> before starting my essay.

## R4 COMMON INSEPARABLE PHRASAL VERBS

Some phrasal verbs cannot be separated (see page 15). Their object always comes after them, even if it is a pronoun.

PHRASAL VERB	DEFINITION	SAMPLE SENTENCE
<b>carry on</b>	continue doing something	The children <b>carried on</b> misbehaving.
<b>catch up with</b>	talk to friends who have not talked to recently	I <b>caught up with</b> some friends yesterday.
<b>come across</b>	find something by chance	I <b>came across</b> some old photographs while cleaning up.
<b>cut back on</b>	reduce the amount of money you spend	The government wants to <b>cut back on</b> spending.
<b>deal with</b>	manage or solve a problem	We learned how to <b>deal with</b> difficult customers.
<b>get at</b>	imply, try to say something indirectly	Sorry, I'm not sure what you're <b>getting at</b> .
<b>get off</b>	exit (public transportation)	George and Yolanda <b>got on</b> the train to Paris.
<b>get on</b>	enter (public transportation)	Gine <b>got off</b> the bus when it arrived at her stop.
<b>get on with</b>	concentrate on doing something	I need to get on with my homework.
<b>get out of</b>	exit (a car or taxi)	Be careful when you <b>get out of</b> the car.
<b>get over</b>	recover, feel well again	It took me a long time to <b>get over</b> the last cold I had.
<b>go over</b>	review	Remember to <b>go over</b> your answers carefully.
<b>go with</b>	look good with another piece of clothing	Does this scarf <b>go with</b> my jacket?
<b>hear from</b>	receive news from	Have you <b>heard from</b> your cousins recently?
<b>keep up with</b>	run at the same speed	Slow down! I can't <b>keep up with</b> you!
<b>live up to</b>	be as good as people had hoped	The movie really <b>lived up to</b> everyone's expectations.
<b>look after</b>	care for, take responsibility for	My mother <b>looks after</b> my children when I'm at work.
<b>look for</b>	search for something	Peter is going to <b>look for</b> a job when he leaves school.
<b>look forward to</b>	wait for something with excitement	George was <b>looking forward to</b> going to the beach.
<b>look up to</b>	admire someone	Lots of young people <b>look up to</b> sports stars.
<b>pull through</b>	survive a serious illness or operation	It was a risky operation, but Josh <b>pulled through</b> .
<b>run out of</b>	not have any more of something	We've <b>run out of</b> food. Let's go to the store.
<b>turn up</b>	be found (usually by accident)	I lost my passport, but I'm sure it'll <b>turn up</b> soon.
<b>weigh in on</b>	add your opinion to an ongoing discussion	The professor <b>weighed in on</b> the political debate.

## R5 COMMON PHRASAL NOUNS

Some nouns are based on phrasal verbs (see page 16). They are often either combined into one word or joined by a hyphen.

PHRASAL NOUN	DEFINITION	SAMPLE SENTENCE
<b>breakdown</b>	when something (e.g. a vehicle) stops working	A <b>breakdown</b> on the highway caused heavy traffic.
<b>break-in</b>	the act of entering a building illegally	There's been a <b>break-in</b> at the local bank.
<b>breakup</b>	the end of a romantic relationship	After their <b>breakup</b> , John and Helen stayed friends.
<b>checkout</b>	the place in a store where you go to pay	Jenny went to the <b>checkout</b> to pay for her groceries.
<b>checkup</b>	an evaluation (especially for your health)	Terry went to the dentist for a <b>checkup</b> .
<b>cover-up</b>	the act of hiding information from people	A newspaper exposed the company's <b>cover-up</b> .
<b>crackdown</b>	the act of strictly enforcing a law	There's been a <b>crackdown</b> on littering in the town.
<b>falling-out</b>	an argument or disagreement	Idris and Giovanni had a <b>falling-out</b> .
<b>getaway</b>	a vacation	Ellen and Piers went to Mexico for a short <b>getaway</b> .
<b>get-together</b>	a social gathering	I'm having a <b>get-together</b> for my 30th birthday.
<b>giveaway</b>	an event where free items are distributed	The bakery did a <b>giveaway</b> to attract more customers.
<b>go-ahead</b>	permission to do something	My manager gave me the <b>go-ahead</b> to leave early.
<b>input</b>	a contribution of information or an opinion	I asked for my teacher's <b>input</b> on my essay.
<b>intake</b>	the amount of something that is taken in	You should limit your daily <b>intake</b> of sugar.
<b>kickoff</b>	the start of a sport match (e.g. soccer)	Liverpool are playing soccer tonight. <b>Kickoff</b> 's at 7pm.
<b>letdown</b>	a disappointment	I thought I'd like that movie, but it was a real <b>letdown</b> .
<b>mix-up</b>	when things are mistaken for each other	This isn't what I ordered. There's been a <b>mix-up</b> .
<b>outset</b>	the beginning	Harry has worked hard from the <b>outset</b> .
<b>printout</b>	a physical copy of an electronic document	Jim gave everyone a <b>printout</b> of the presentation.
<b>setback</b>	a hinderance or delay	There were a lot of <b>setbacks</b> during the project.
<b>sleepover</b>	when you sleep at someone else's house	Phoebe went for a <b>sleepover</b> at Eliza's house.
<b>stopover</b>	a stop somewhere on your way elsewhere	Our flight to Los Angeles had a <b>stopover</b> in New York.
<b>takeout (US) / takeaway (UK)</b>	food that you buy and take elsewhere (especially your own home) to eat	I don't want to cook. Let's order some <b>takeout</b> instead.
<b>workout</b>	a period of exercise	Dimitri was exhausted after his <b>workout</b> .



## R6 COMMON PHRASAL ADJECTIVES

Some adjectives are based on phrasal verbs (see page 17). They are often either combined into one word or joined by a hyphen.

PHRASAL ADJECTIVE	DEFINITION	SAMPLE SENTENCE
<b>backup</b>	supporting or alternative	I always make a <b>backup</b> copy of all my files.
<b>beaten-up</b>	old and in a bad state	Ken's finally getting rid of his old, <b>beaten-up</b> car.
<b>broken-down</b>	(usually about a vehicle) no longer working	A <b>broken-down</b> truck caused delays on the highway.
<b>bygone</b>	of the distant past	These old photographs are from a <b>bygone</b> era.
<b>drawn-out</b>	lasting a very long time (negative)	Buying a house can be a stressful, <b>drawn-out</b> process.
<b>follow-up</b>	following	My doctor and I scheduled a <b>follow-up</b> appointment.
<b>getaway</b>	used to escape	The thieves escaped in a <b>getaway</b> car.
<b>incoming</b>	arriving	Everyone rushed to prepare for the <b>incoming</b> storm.
<b>knockdown</b>	lower than usual or before	Kemal sold some of his jewelry at a <b>knockdown</b> price.
<b>leftover</b>	remaining after the rest has been used	There's some <b>leftover</b> chicken in the fridge.
<b>made-up</b>	invented, not true	Wayne is always telling his friends <b>made-up</b> stories.
<b>off-putting</b>	unattractive, unappealing	I found the violence in the movie very <b>off-putting</b> .
<b>ongoing</b>	in progress	There's an <b>ongoing</b> investigation into their finances.
<b>outdated</b>	out of date, old-fashioned	I'm replacing my <b>outdated</b> computer with a new one.
<b>outgoing</b>	sociable, extroverted	Kerry is a very friendly and <b>outgoing</b> person.
<b>outspoken</b>	opinionated, vocal about your opinions	My dad is very <b>outspoken</b> about environmental issues.
<b>outstanding</b>	excellent	Chris's professor told him his essay was <b>outstanding</b> .
<b>outstretched</b>	stretched out as far as possible	Finn approached me with his arms <b>outstretched</b> .
<b>run-down</b>	in a poor condition	Paolo is renovating an old, <b>run-down</b> house.
<b>stressed-out</b>	anxious about something	Somrita is <b>stressed-out</b> with work at the moment.
<b>tired out</b>	exhausted	Vi is feeling <b>tired out</b> after a long day at work.
<b>upcoming</b>	taking place in the near future	The country is preparing for the <b>upcoming</b> election.
<b>uplifting</b>	inspiring, cheerful	Jo was feeling sad, so she watched an <b>uplifting</b> movie.
<b>worn-out</b>	exhausted, extremely tired	Gerry was completely <b>worn-out</b> after his run.

# Answers

## 01

### 1.3

- 1 People left the stadium in large numbers.
- 2 He has been flattering him for a favor.
- 3 They think they are better than her.
- 4 I found the portrait by chance.

### 1.4

- 1 Jordan's aunts fuss over him when they visit.
- 2 I found it hard to fit in with the art class.
- 3 Nuwa gathered up the plates from the table.
- 4 Sandra was asking after you at the park.

### 1.5

- 1 Some of the older children have been **ganging up** on me and calling me names.
- 2 Ava lost her passport ages ago. It **turned up** when she was cleaning the living room.
- 3 Adi has got a temper. He **turned on** me the instant I suggested he buy a new suit.
- 4 Mel lent Dave her lawnmower a month ago, and she finally got it **back** from him.

### 1.6

- 1 turn up 2 watch over 3 turn on
- 4 wear down 5 pack into

### 1.7

- 1 Some of the older children have been **ganging up** on me and calling me names.
- 2 Mel lent Dave her lawnmower a month ago, and she finally **got it back** from him.
- 3 I got my son a puppy. After asking me for months, he finally **wore me down**!
- 4 Hundreds of people **packed into** the town hall to watch the debate.
- 5 Barney really **looks up to** his grandfather. He loves listening to his stories.

## 02

### 2.3

- 1 I let the cat in when it started to rain.
- 2 Olly's dog ran away last week while they were at the park.
- 3 My mother looks after my children while I'm at work.

### 2.4

- 1 After a few days, Olly's dog came back all by herself.
- 2 Jasmine takes after her mother. They're very similar people.
- 3 I let the cat out every morning after I've woken up.
- 4 Albert's parents named him after his great-grandfather.
- 5 After traveling for a few years, Bill settled down and bought a house.
- 6 Colin lives with his son in a house at the edge of town.

### 2.5

- 1 Lisa puts her rabbit in its cage each evening before bed.
- 2 Will and Joe are identical twins. It's almost impossible to tell them **apart**.
- 3 After traveling for a few years, Bill **settled down** and bought a house next door to his parents.
- 4 Liam gets **on** very well with his elder sister. They're always laughing together.
- 5 Fiona's cat doesn't like strangers, but he's warming to Dan.
- 6 Jenny's **grown out of** her old toys, she prefers playing video games now.

### 2.6

- 1 Will and Joe are identical twins. It's almost impossible to tell them **apart**.
- 2 Lisa **puts** her rabbit in its cage each evening before bed.
- 3 Jasmine **takes after** her mother. They're very similar people.
- 4 I let the cat **out** every morning after I've woken up.
- 5 Jenny's **grown out of** her old toys, she prefers playing video games now.

## 03

### 3.3

- A 3 B 2 C 1 D 5 E 4 F 6

### 3.4

- 1 My brother **set me up** with a woman who works at his office.
- 2 Jack and Ula **really care for** each other. They've been together for 50 years.
- 3 They started **going out with** each other when they were at school.
- 4 Misha **stood by** Colin when he decided to quit college.

### 3.5

- 1 go off 2 bring together 3 fizzle out
- 4 set up 5 drift apart 6 finish with
- 7 care for

### 3.6

- 1 My best friends and I have **stuck together** since high school.
- 2 For our first date, Phil **took me out** to an expensive restaurant.
- 3 Bernadette **confided in** Martha that she was in love with Pavel.
- 4 Luisa has **finished with** Ben. He's very upset.
- 5 Ken **stuck by** Cath when her restaurant went bankrupt.

## 04

### 4.3

- 1 show around 2 invite along 3 show out
- 4 snoop around 5 stay over

### 4.4

- 1 He arrived at 6am.
- 2 They gave me a tour.
- 3 They brought their kids with them.
- 4 We'd like you to come to our home.
- 5 He visited me at my home.

### 4.5

- 1 On her way home from the gym, Miriam **stopped off at the supermarket**.
- 2 My father came into the house and **took off his coat**.
- 3 Omar told us to come over **any time after 2pm**.
- 4 After chatting on the doorstep, Malik **invited me in**.
- 5 We ended up staying over at Beth and Omar's house.
- 6 While everyone was in the garden, I **found Klaus snooping around inside**.

### 4.6

- 1 My new neighbors, Kaito and Leiko, **had me over** for dinner last night.
- 2 We chatted for hours, and he suggested I **stick around** for dinner.
- 3 On our way home from the beach, we **called in** to see Grandma.
- 4 Omar told us to **come over** any time after 2pm.
- 5 While you're in town, try to **swing by**. It would be good to see you.

## 5.3

- Amara let her little sister **tag along** when she went to the ice rink.
- Ella likes to get **together** with her friends at the ice cream parlor.
- I hate to tear you **away**, but we're going to miss the last train.
- Katie asked Lisa if she wanted to come **out** to play.
- Joe suddenly took **off** without saying where he was going.

## 5.4

- Charlie stormed **out of** the store when the manager refused to give him a refund.
- As I was leaving for the art exhibition, I asked Joe if he wanted to come **along**.
- Lots of guests were **milling around**, waiting for Raj to make his speech.
- Vincent and Maya decided to stay **in**. They ordered pizza and watched a movie.
- We headed **off to** the beach early because we wanted to avoid the crowds.
- Once a year, my school friends and I go out for a meal together to catch **up**.

## 5.5

- shoot off
- mill around
- liven up
- stay out

## 5.6

- Nadiya had to **dash off to pick up** the kids from school.
- The carnival was amazing. **We stayed out until dawn**.
- Fleur and Clare were getting **ready to go out** for the evening.
- Our local hotel has a large room that it **hires out for** parties.

## 6.2

- All the children at the party had dressed up as dinosaurs.
- Maurice hung up his coat as he walked in.
- Angelica helped her son to button up his shirt as he got ready for school.
- I hope this juice stain comes out when I wash my shirt.

## 6.3

- Marlon zipped up his leather jacket and walked toward the door.
- Gemma's shoes go really well with that dress.
- Arnie's so proud of his new jacket. He's been showing it off to everyone.
- Zane folded up his clothes and put them in the wardrobe.

## 6.4

A 3 B 6 C 1 D 4 E 7 F 2 G 5

## 6.5

- Mirek **did up** his coat to keep out the icy breeze.
- Kelly stopped to **tie up** one of her shoe laces.
- The sun is really strong today, so make sure you **cover up**.
- Gio's **grown out of** his sweater, so he's going to give it to his little brother.
- Alex **put on** her prettiest dress to go out for her wedding anniversary.

## 7.3

- Heavy traffic has had a strong effect on the city's air quality.
- Old cell phones aren't as good as today's smartphones.
- Due to her injury, Colleen had to accept the fact that she couldn't play in the match.
- To get into college, you'll need to get better results than you got last year.

## 7.4

- Sanjay got 100% on his exam. He more than **measured up to** his parents' expectations.
- The new action movie really **lived up to** the crowd's expectations.
- The discovery of some ancient ruins has **led to** an increase in tourism.
- The invention of the computer **brought about** the end of the typewriter.
- The heavy rain **resulted in** floods throughout the city.

## 8.5

- not wake up when your alarm rings
- go to bed
- go to bed later than usual

- take a lying position
- do small tasks in a relaxed way
- make yourself look clean and tidy
- get out of bed

## 8.6

- sleep over
- sleep in
- get in
- get up
- go off

## 8.7

- wake up
- head off (to)
- doze off
- sit down
- set about

## 8.8

- After a short break, Ramone **got on with** cleaning the bathroom.
- Martina **stayed up late** studying for her exam the following morning.
- I tried to wake Mia when I saw she had **dozed off at** her desk.
- Quite a few people **nodded off during** the speech.

## 9.3

- I got lost driving to your house. I had to pull over and ask for **directions**.
- Tanya turned off the main road and drove along the track to the beach.
- The helicopter took off from the top of the skyscraper.
- Gina got off the bus when it arrived at her stop.
- The train left the station slowly, before speeding up as it headed to the coast.

## 9.4

- Jen turned **back** when she realized that she had forgotten her phone.
- I pulled **up** by the train station to let my daughter out.
- Sally picked her friends **up** outside the movie theater at 9pm.
- When you reach the castle, turn **onto** the highway and head west.
- Jamie dropped me **off** at the train station on his way to work.
- Angelo left his house and got **into** the taxi.
- Marion didn't notice the motorcycle as she pulled **out of** the junction.



## 9.5

- 1 As the movie star **got out of** the limousine, photographers surrounded him.
- 2 We **pulled in** at a small roadside café, where we could have some breakfast.
- 3 The plane **touched down** in Dubai at 9pm in the evening.
- 4 You should always **slow down** when you drive past a school.
- 5 Clive tried to restart the motorboat's engine after it **cut out** without any warning.

## 9.6

- 1 get on 2 slow down 3 break down
- 4 drive off 5 turn onto

# 10

## 10.2

- 1 The fitting rooms are over there if you'd like to wear the clothes to see if they fit.
- 2 The mugs I bought online are broken. I'm going to return them to the seller by mail.
- 3 I bought my new laptop online, and went to collect it from my local store.
- 4 Before buying a new car, it's worth visiting several stores to compare prices.
- 5 I went to the market to buy some bread, but all the bread had been sold.

## 10.3

- 1 line up 2 stock up (on) 3 cross off
- 4 sell out (of) 5 snap up

## 10.4

- 1 Marta couldn't wait to **try out** her new games console.
- 2 Kemal **knocked down** the price of jewelry by 15% to attract shoppers to his new store.
- 3 Luis put the melon in his basket and **checked it off** his shopping list.
- 4 Aisha decided to **splash out** on clothes for her summer vacation.
- 5 Ellie used her credit card to **pay for** the scarf.

## 10.5

- 1 Aziz had been looking **around** the store for ages, but couldn't find a shirt he liked.
- 2 Shoppers had **already snapped up** all the bargains at the sale by the time I'd arrived.
- 3 Once Ellie had found a scarf that she liked, she went to **check out**.
- 4 Carla didn't like the sweater she'd bought, so she decided to **take it back**.
- 5 Joshua crossed **off** each item on the shopping list as he found it.

# 11

## 11.2

- 1 Today started off nicely, so we ate our breakfast on the terrace.
- 2 After days of bad weather, the rain finally started to let up.
- 3 Chris and Mel had to leave the beach when it started bucketing down.
- 4 The weather's been awful, but it's finally starting to brighten up.

## 11.3

- 1 Minutes after Ben had lit the grill, the sky clouded over.
- 2 People go ice-skating when the lake freezes over in the winter.
- 3 The wind's picking up. It's perfect weather for flying a kite.
- 4 Alice likes to sit on the balcony when the weather cools down in the evening.

## 11.4

- 1 As soon as the storm had **blown over**, the hikers left the cave and continued walking.
- 2 As dark storm clouds **rolled in** from the east, Arthur tried to get home before the rain started.
- 3 It looks like the weather's **clearing up**. We'll be able to start the game again soon.
- 4 By the end of May, the weather starts to **warm up** and the tourists start to arrive.
- 5 Once the storm had **calmed down**, Grace checked her house for damage.

## 11.5

- A 4 B 1 C 7 D 2 E 6 F 3 G 8 H 5

# 12

## 12.4

- A 5 B 1 C 7 D 4 E 2 F 6 G 3

## 12.5

- 1 When Amy zoomed in, she noticed the red car in front of the restaurant.
- 2 Some criminals hacked into our computer system and stole the new designs.
- 3 Pete scrolled up to the top of the document to find the company's address.

## 12.6

- 1 You should **shut down** your computer at night to save electricity.

- 2 Click on the link at the bottom of the page to see the answers.
- 3 I **back up** all my photos in case my computer breaks.
- 4 Always make sure you **log out** of your account after using it.
- 5 The company has started **phasing in** new computers. They look great!

## 12.7

- 1 I **type out** my essays because it's quicker than writing them by hand.
- 2 I **printed out** a copy of the contract for the clients to sign.
- 3 Our company hired a technician to **set up** the new printer.
- 4 You have to **type in** your password to access the website.
- 5 Amy **zoomed out** to look at the whole picture at once.

# 13

## 13.3

- 1 One of my old school friends is a candidate for mayor.
- 2 The police stopped people from entering the area where the crime had taken place.
- 3 After robbing the store, the thieves escaped in a stolen car.
- 4 Be aware of pickpockets when you're on the train!
- 5 The police are becoming stricter on illegal parking in the city.
- 6 Activists are asking the government publicly to protect the country's forests.

## 13.4

- A 7 B 1 C 4 D 2 E 6 F 3 G 5 H 8

## 13.5

- 1 The police ordered the criminal to hand over the stolen money.
- 2 Senators voted on the new law after a long debate.
- 3 Janice is leading a campaign to stamp out littering in the park.
- 4 While I was driving home, the traffic police pulled me over for speeding.
- 5 Dan tipped off the police about the location of the stolen artworks.

## 13.6

- 1 vote for 2 turn to 3 track down
- 4 beat up 5 bring in 6 call for



# 14

## 14.2

- ① The company reduced in value.
- ② Tommy had to spend a lot of money.
- ③ I inherited a lot of money.
- ④ Patrick put money into a bank
- ⑤ We paid Wayne what we owed him.

## 14.3

- ① pay up    ② wipe off    ③ run up
- ④ chip in    ⑤ live on
- ⑥ save up

## 14.4

- ① Sara has finally **coughed up** the money I lent her last year.
- ② I've decided to **cut back on** spending by bringing my own lunch to work.
- ③ The food was excellent, but we were shocked when the bill **came to** more than \$200.
- ④ The cost of the new stadium has already **run into** the millions.
- ⑤ Try to pay your bills as soon as they arrive. They can soon **add up**.

## 14.5

- ① The cost of the new stadium has already **run into** the millions.
- ② The food was excellent, but we were shocked when the bill **came to** more than \$200.
- ③ Tara and Ali are saving up for a new house. They try to save \$300 each month.
- ④ Tommy had to fork out more than \$600 to get his car repaired.
- ⑤ Pete went to the ATM to take out some cash.

# 15

## 15.3

- ① Move more quickly, Oliver.
- ② I have more time for my studies.
- ③ I began to love Phil.
- ④ He makes lectures last longer.
- ⑤ I like to pass the time by reading.
- ⑥ He had no more time.
- ⑦ Your session has ended due to inactivity.

## 15.4

- ① drag out    ② hurry up    ③ wait for
- ④ break up    ⑤ while away

## 15.5

- ① The journey **dragged on** for hours. The kids were so bored.
- ② Commuting to and from work really **eats into** my time.
- ③ Cleaning the house **took up** all of Liam's weekend.
- ④ The deadline for the project **crept up on** us.

## 15.6

- ① The service here is terrible! It's **holding everyone up**.
- ② Time's **getting on now**. Let's hurry home before it gets dark.
- ③ Can you **hang on** a minute while I grab my umbrella?
- ④ The doctor's busy today, but I'll try to **fit you in** tomorrow.

# 16

## 16.4

- A 6 B 1 C 4 D 2 E 7 F 5 G 3 H 8

## 16.5

- ① In my country, the clocks go **forward** by one hour in the spring.
- ② The clocks go **back** by one hour in the fall.
- ③ Elly and George are looking **forward to** going to the beach later.
- ④ Claude is unwell today. We'll have to push our meeting **back to** tomorrow.
- ⑤ Finding my old toys brought **back** happy memories of my childhood.
- ⑥ The building project has just begun. Months of construction work **lie ahead**.
- ⑦ We are planning to turn the store **back into** a house and live there.
- ⑧ All the streets were decorated in the weeks **leading up to** the festival.

## 16.6

- ① This dress takes me back to **my childhood in the 1960s**.
- ② Kira had dreamed of becoming a great actor, **but her plans didn't pan out**.
- ③ Peter reminds me of you **when you were a little boy**.
- ④ Many of the buildings in my city **date back to the 19th century**.
- ⑤ The house was turned into a **convenience store in the 1980s**.

## 16.7

- ① The doctor's off tomorrow, so could we **bring** your appointment **forward to** today?
- ② Colin is working hard because the deadline for his article is **coming up**.
- ③ Roland **looks back on** his college days with pleasure.
- ④ All the streets were decorated in the weeks **leading up to** the festival.
- ⑤ I like to listen to music and **think back to** my days as a musician in Paris.
- ⑥ The building project has just begun. Months of construction work **lie ahead**.

# 17

## 17.3

- ① Take traffic delays into consideration when estimating how long the journey will take.
- ② We've been meaning to get a new kitchen for years, but haven't found the time for it.
- ③ Giovanni forgot about the art project, but he managed to do it without preparation.
- ④ The two directors had several meetings to make the new contract more definite.
- ⑤ I asked Sabrina if she wanted to go camping, but she rejected the idea.
- ⑥ The negotiating teams stayed up to discuss and reach an agreement on a new treaty.

## 17.4

- ① They stayed up until after midnight **hammering out** a new treaty.
- ② Cleo pretended to be sick to **get out of** going out.
- ③ Dexter was going to ask Becky out, but he **chickened out**.
- ④ You need to **think ahead** and save money for the future.

## 17.5

- ① You should **plan ahead** before setting off on a long car journey.
- ② Seb said he'd help me paint the house, but he **went back on** his promise.
- ③ **Look ahead** and picture what you want to be doing in five years' time.
- ④ The store **weaseled out of** giving us a refund by claiming we had broken the vase.
- ⑤ Ed had promised to do a bungee jump with me, but **backed out** at the last minute.

## 17.6

- A 6 B 5 C 1 D 3 E 2 F 7 G 4

## 18.4

- 1 The soup has a tomato and basil flavor.
- 2 Marcus used his telescope.
- 3 Robert searched for his glasses.
- 4 Please listen to me!

## 18.5

- 1 stink out
- 2 look at
- 3 listen out for
- 4 listen in on
- 5 sniff around
- 6 look through

## 18.6

- 1 sniff around
- 2 look at
- 3 look out over
- 4 look away

## 18.7

- 1 listen in (on)
- 2 stink out
- 3 look out for
- 4 hear about
- 5 listen up
- 6 hear out
- 7 look on

## 18.8

- 1 Alex's cookies **smelled of** cinnamon. I asked to try one.
- 2 Have you **heard about** the new gym in town? It's supposed to be great.
- 3 Dayita **listened to** the radio while she ate her breakfast.
- 4 Fiona **spied on** her colleagues to steal their ideas.
- 5 Sarah and Dionne **looked into** the well. There was no sign of the bottom.

## 19.3

- A 2 B 5 C 1 D 3 E 4

## 19.4

- 1 Kazuo got the monkey to climb **down** by offering it a banana.
- 2 The explorers walked **into** the cave.
- 3 Doug dropped back to help one of the other hikers, who had injured himself.
- 4 As we came down from the summit, the weather became much worse.

- 5 The saleswoman came up to Fabio and asked if he needed any help.
- 6 Clive lifted his daughter up so that she could see the deer.

## 19.5

- 1 When I heard someone calling my name, I **turned around**.
- 2 Martin was exhausted, and began to **fall** behind the other runners.
- 3 Clive lifted his daughter **up** so that she could see the deer.
- 4 Janine grabbed her coat and walked **out** of the room.
- 5 Doug dropped **back** to help one of the other hikers, who had injured himself.

## 19.6

- 1 Tanya **turned away as** the nurse gave her the injection.
- 2 The monkey **climbed up** the tree with Kazuo's camera.
- 3 Helen told her son to **get down from** the garden wall.
- 4 As the train **went through** the mountain range, Ted took some photographs.

## 20.3

- 1 Leo is the youngest in his class, but manages to keep up with his classmates.
- 2 She's looking into how astronauts might travel to Mars one day.
- 3 Sam has dived into his new project. He spent all weekend working on it.
- 4 The library was full of students swotting up on English grammar.
- 5 At the start of your presentation, lay out the main points you are going to discuss.

## 20.4

- 1 Noah is **majoring in** international politics at college.
- 2 I kept making mistakes, so I decided to **start over**.
- 3 Patsy's research **focuses on** space travel.
- 4 Fiona **worked through** the problems in her code to fix the issues.

## 20.5

- 1 work through
- 2 move on to
- 3 count toward

- 4 mark down
- 5 focus on
- 6 lay out

## 20.6

- A 5 B 1 C 8 D 3 E 4 F 2 G 7 H 6

## 21.3

- 1 Schools close in July.
- 2 Marco did not punish Gio and Carmen.
- 3 Zosia reprimanded the children.
- 4 Rosie responds rudely to her teachers.

## 21.4

- 1 After the class, Arun packed up his things and got ready to leave.
- 2 Miguel handed in his assignment just before the deadline.
- 3 Ramu's working on a huge painting of New York.
- 4 The teacher handed out the worksheet to each student.

## 21.5

- 1 not stand for
- 2 hand in
- 3 drop out
- 4 play up

## 21.6

- 1 hand out (to)
- 2 wipe off
- 3 not stand for
- 4 drop out
- 5 turn to

## 21.7

- 1 Good morning class. Please **take out** your books.
- 2 The kids have been **playing up** all morning.
- 3 Despite the teacher's warnings, the children **carried on** misbehaving.
- 4 You've spent too much time **goofing off** this semester, Jesse.
- 5 Mateo and Juanita are very naughty, but Martina lets them **get away with** it.

## 22.4

- 1 Ted used to be very proactive, but he's been **slacking off** lately.
- 2 I've got lots to do! I need to **knuckle down** and get it finished.
- 3 Angela **meets up with** her colleagues once a week to discuss all their new ideas.



- ④ Our manager was busy, so she had to **call off** our meeting.  
 ⑤ Jennie's been **slogging away** trying to finish writing her presentation.  
 ⑥ Kamal's manager **chased up** the report, which was already a week late.  
 ⑦ I **clock in** at 9am every morning.

## 22.5

A, C, D, F, G, I

## 22.6

- ① I'm not feeling very well today, so I'm going to **call in** sick.  
 ② I've been very busy lately, but I have next week off work.  
 ③ I **clock off** at 5pm every afternoon.  
 ④ Ola is carrying out a survey about worker satisfaction.

## 22.7

- ① The applications for the new manager position are **piling up**. I'd better start looking through them.  
 ② Fiona was struggling to finalize the company's accounts, but she kept **plugging away** at them.  
 ③ Debbie **took** the afternoon **off** so she could go to the dentist.  
 ④ Despite the storm, the engineers **soldiered on** and installed the new phone line.

# 23

## 23.2

- ① go back to  
 ② draw on  
 ③ head up  
 ④ stick with

## 23.3

- ① Elliot found the job easily.  
 ② Katie makes use of her experience.  
 ③ Naina is planning to become a teacher.  
 ④ I went back to work.  
 ⑤ Diana leads the new department.  
 ⑥ Chad is looking for jobs in the media.  
 ⑦ Olivia is trying to become a journalist.

## 23.4

- ① stick with  
 ② apply for  
 ③ take over  
 ④ go back to  
 ⑤ wind down

## 23.5

- ① get into  
 ② burn out  
 ③ branch out (into)  
 ④ put off  
 ⑤ cash in on  
 ⑥ fall back on  
 ⑦ set out

# 24

## 24.2

- ① The bank agreed to write off the debt, saving Ethan's company from bankruptcy.  
 ② We are proud to announce that our two banks are entering into a partnership.  
 ③ Mario's gas station has just gone under. It had been struggling for a long time.  
 ④ Katie's trying to drum up interest in her café by offering free samples of her cakes.

## 24.3

- ① Marco's garden center is doing well. It turns **over** almost \$250,000 a year.  
 ② We need the CEO to **sign off** on this important decision.  
 ③ The board has finally **come** to a decision about the new logo for the company.  
 ④ Ellie's company deals **in** antiques. She sells pieces from all over the world.  
 ⑤ Could you **draw up** a contract for our new clients?  
 ⑥ The company is facing difficulties. We may need to lay **off** some staff.

## 24.4

- ① fall through  
 ② come to  
 ③ sign off  
 ④ drum up  
 ⑤ enter into  
 ⑥ profit from

## 24.5

- ① Our business is growing, so we are **taking on** more staff.  
 ② A new bookstore is **opening up** in our neighborhood.  
 ③ Chrissie has just **started up** her own hair salon. It opened last week.  
 ④ Gemma has **bought out** all the other partners.  
 ⑤ Al's store is **selling off** a lot of its stock.  
 ⑥ Alan's sportswear company **profited from** the cold weather.

# 25

## 25.3

- ① The number of people buying clothes online shot up last year.  
 ② The coach divided the children up into two equal teams.  
 ③ Shreya counted up the number of people wanting coffee and went to make some.  
 ④ When Georgia was paying her check, she added on a 20% tip.

## 25.4

A 3 B 1 C 6 D 2 E 4 F 5

## 25.5

- ① Katie's bills have been **stacking up**. She's in a lot of debt now.  
 ② The company's share price has been falling, but it's finally starting to **bottom out**.  
 ③ The temperature varies a bit in the summer, but it **averages out at** about 25°C.  
 ④ We estimated the cost of the project to be £14,900, but **rounded it up** to the nearest thousand.  
 ⑤ If you want to set yourself a budget, start by **adding up** all your monthly expenses.

## 25.6

- ① count down ② add up ③ average out  
 (at) ④ level out ⑤ count out ⑥ bottom out

# 26

## 26.4

- ① scrape by ② carry off ③ win out  
 ④ sail through ⑤ run into ⑥ give up  
 ⑦ screw up

## 26.5

- ① screw up ② carry off ③ win out  
 ④ come off ⑤ run into

## 26.6

- ① My teachers told me I'd never amount to anything, but now I'm a lawyer.  
 ② Anita's **hard work** has paid off. The dress looks beautiful.  
 ③ Many smaller stores have lost out since the supermarket opened in town.  
 ④ Nia built on her experience working at a hotel to set up her own guesthouse.  
 ⑤ Having supportive parents really contributed to my success.

## 26.7

- ① Clive **muddled through** the interview without any preparation. He was shocked when he got the job.
- ② When I didn't get into college, I started my own successful business. Everything **worked out** in the end!
- ③ The Scottish team **pulled off** an amazing victory, scoring two goals in the last four minutes.
- ④ When Al saw how many people were making money by selling things online, he decided to **get in on** it.
- ⑤ Kwase **sailed through** his driving test. He didn't make any mistakes.

## 27

### 27.4

- ① If you're bored, **turn on** the television. There's a good movie on tonight.
- ② When Ben got home, he realized that he'd forgotten his keys and was **locked out**.
- ③ My parents have decided to **move away** and live in the country.
- ④ When Elsa heard her favorite song on the radio, she **turned up** the volume.
- ⑤ The street lights **come on** at dusk, when the sun sets.
- ⑥ The lights in the house **went out**, so Clara lit some candles.
- ⑦ We finally sold our house. We're **moving out** today.

### 27.5

- ① go off
- ② move in
- ③ lock out
- ④ turn on
- ⑤ turn down

### 27.6

- A 3 B 1 C 6 D 2 E 5 F 4

### 27.7

- ① turn off ② lock in ③ leave on
- ④ turn down ⑤ come on

## 28

### 28.3

- ① put back ② chop down ③ pitch in
- ④ pull up ⑤ take out ⑥ clear out
- ⑦ wash up

## 28.4

- ① Nousha's room looked much nicer after she'd put **up** some pictures.
- ② Paul spent the whole afternoon pulling **up** weeds.
- ③ Karl swept **up** the trash from the party and put it into bags.
- ④ After finishing the gardening, Scott put his tools **away**.
- ⑤ Jason told me to mop **up** the water that I'd spilled on the floor.

### 28.5

- ① The tree in our backyard died, so we had to **chop it down**.
- ② I'm **digging up** the lavender bushes so I can move them to a different part of the garden.
- ③ I **wipe down** the table each evening after we've eaten.
- ④ We need to **tidy up** before the guests arrive.
- ⑤ The hedge in Doug's yard was getting too big, so he **cut it back**.

### 28.6

- ① On Tuesday mornings, I **take** the trash out.
- ② If the chicken smells bad, **throw it out**.
- ③ Ian **hung** his washing out to dry.
- ④ We **cleared out** the garage this weekend.
- ⑤ There was a mess to **clean up** after the party.

## 29

### 29.3

- ① I always **cut off** the fat from the meat before cooking it.
- ② My breakfast typically **consists of** bread and cheese, served **with** coffee.
- ③ Nadiya left the cherry pie on the windowsill to **cool down**.
- ④ Before serving the curry I made sure to **fish out** any bones.
- ⑤ My sister can **whip up** a tasty meal in minutes from just a few ingredients.

### 29.4

- ① chop up
- ② set aside
- ③ cut off
- ④ mix in
- ⑤ pour in
- ⑥ finish off
- ⑦ fish out
- ⑧ cool down
- ⑨ leave out

## 29.5

- ① Patrick broke up the chocolate before adding it to the cake mixture.
- ② My sister can whip up a tasty meal in minutes from just a few ingredients.
- ③ The sauce boiled over, leaving a mess on the stove top.
- ④ I always measure out all of my ingredients before trying a new recipe.
- ⑤ We managed to fill up three jars with the cookies we'd baked.

### 29.6

- ① After chopping the vegetables, **set** them aside.
- ② **Cut off** the fat from the meat before cooking it.
- ③ When the meat is cooked, **pour in** the stock.
- ④ **Mix in** the eggs with the other ingredients.
- ⑤ **Finish off** the stew by adding chopped parsley.
- ⑥ Before serving, make sure to **fish out** any bones.
- ⑦ For a vegetarian version, **leave out** the meat.

## 30

### 30.3

- ① I washed down my pizza **with** a cold drink.
- ② Our restaurant can cater for **about 100 customers at a time**.
- ③ After the wedding, **we all drank to the bride and groom**.
- ④ Lisa shared out the chocolates, **giving the children two each**.
- ⑤ I was going to make a lasagna, **but we've run out of pasta**.

### 30.4

- ① Paul and Sarah ordered two hamburgers and sodas to **take away**.
- ② The café was about to close, so we drank up and got ready to leave.
- ③ I washed **down** my pizza with a cold drink.
- ④ After a long day at the beach, my kids wolfed **down** their dinner.
- ⑤ Daniel broke **off** a piece of bread and dipped it in the olive oil.

### 30.5

- ① run out of ② go off ③ eat up
- ④ wash down ⑤ go together

### 30.6

- ① eat out ② top up ③ drink to ④ eat in
- ⑤ go together



# 31

## 31.3

- 1 Ken's currently working **toward** getting a black belt in judo.
- 2 Nathan told his daughters to stop lazing **about**, and help to tidy the house.
- 3 After the exam, the students went to the local park to wind **down**.
- 4 I recently got back **into** cycling. I hadn't done it since I was a teenager.
- 5 On Friday evenings, Josh likes to kick **back** and watch some television.
- 6 Anastasia absolutely lives **for** skiing. She goes to the mountains whenever she can.

## 31.4

- 1 Adi's painting skills are really coming along. He might become an artist one day.
- 2 I found running very hard when I started, but I get a lot of satisfaction out of it now.
- 3 Learning the piano isn't easy, but if you stick at it, you could become a great pianist.
- 4 Fabio could have been a great guitarist, but he threw it all away by never practicing.

## 31.5

- 1 curl up
- 2 start out
- 3 sit around
- 4 live for

## 31.6

- 1 I spend most Sundays lying about the house.
- 2 Aden needs to loosen up and dance with us.
- 3 On my days off, I like to sit around the garden.
- 4 Luiza spent the evening curled up on the couch.
- 5 After a stressful day, I take a bath to chill out.

# 32

## 32.2

- 1 heal up
- 2 throw up
- 3 flare up
- 4 come around
- 5 seize up
- 6 go around

## 32.3

- 1 Elaine's rash began to clear **up** after she started using the cream.
- 2 I think I'm coming down **with** the flu.
- 3 Ella's been throwing **up** all day.
- 4 My son passed **on** the virus to his sisters.
- 5 It's taken me weeks to get **over** this cold, but I finally feel better.

## 32.4

- 1 Paola's hay fever usually **flares up** in the spring.
- 2 After a few hours, the swelling had started to **go down**.
- 3 Danny's thumb **swelled up** after he was stung by a wasp.
- 4 My brother's a nurse. He **cares for** sick people at the local hospital.
- 5 I was very sad to hear that your grandmother has **passed away**.

## 32.5

- 1 care for
- 2 feel up to
- 3 go around
- 4 wear off
- 5 pull through

# 33

## 33.3

- 1 After finishing the race, Sandra warmed **down** by stretching her legs.
- 2 Jamal was completely wiped **out** after cycling up the mountain.
- 3 Clara was sent **off** the pitch after pushing over another player.
- 4 Five runners have gotten **through** to the final. Whoever wins this race will win the trophy.
- 5 My sister is a judo champion. She ranks **among** the best in the country.
- 6 I struggle to keep **up** with my brother. He's much fitter than I am.

## 33.4

- 1 Before playing a game of soccer, I always warm up by jogging slowly.
- 2 For this yoga position, you have to stretch your arms out as far as you can.
- 3 Pete wanted to start playing baseball, so he signed up for his school team.
- 4 Angela knocked Kirsten out in the first round of the competition.
- 5 My knee injury kept me from completing the marathon this year.

## 33.5

- 1 Clara was sent **off** the pitch after pushing over another player.
- 2 The crowd cheered Tony on as he approached the finish line.
- 3 I picked up my bow and aimed another arrow at the target.
- 4 Playing tennis all afternoon with Gus has worn Charlie out.
- 5 Leo works out at his local gym every morning.

## 33.6

- 1 keep up (with)
- 2 warm up
- 3 size up
- 4 turn around
- 5 burn off
- 6 cheer on
- 7 work off

# 34

## 34.4

- 1 The new music channel is **aimed at** people who like jazz.
- 2 At the start of the horror movie, scary music started to **fade in**.
- 3 My new headphones **help** me concentrate by **filtering out** background noise.
- 4 This new TV show **feeds on** people's curiosity about aliens.
- 5 The noise from the parade **faded away** as it moved away from us.
- 6 I **tune into** my favorite radio show every Sunday morning.

## 34.5

- 1 This new TV show feeds on people's curiosity about aliens.
- 2 I tune into my favorite radio show every Sunday morning.
- 3 The architects have mocked up a model of the new museum.
- 4 The new music channel is aimed at people who like jazz.
- 5 Greg and Chloe colored in pictures of dinosaurs after their trip to the museum.

# 35

## 35.2

- 1 get around
- 2 check in
- 3 get back from
- 4 put up
- 5 soak up

## 35.3

- 1 We brought you back some local olives.
- 2 They checked out of the hotel.
- 3 Marimar and I went off to Miami recently.
- 4 It was great to get away for a few days!

## 35.4

- 1 On our way to Barcelona, **we stopped over in a hotel for the night**.
- 2 Whenever we set out on a hike, **we always take a compass and a map**.

- ③ We set off for Chicago at dawn **when there would be less traffic**.
- ④ When she arrived at the hotel, **Julia went to the reception to check in**.
- ⑤ We managed to put the tent up **even though it was raining heavily**.

### 35.5

- ① When Krishna **arrived at** the villa, the party had begun.
- ② We're **packing in** lots of sightseeing during our vacation.
- ③ It was great to **get away** for a few days.
- ④ We've been in Cyprus for a few days, but we're **heading for** Athens on today.
- ⑤ On your way to London, you'll **pass by** Cambridge.

## 36

### 36.2

- ① Kirsty talked the workers **through the new software system**.
- ② Shona wanted to dye her hair purple, but **her sister talked her out of it**.
- ③ Diana is always rambling on about **how things were better when she was a child**.
- ④ Uncle Toby still talks down to me **like I'm a child, even though I'm 25**.
- ⑤ Shut up **and listen to me for once!**
- ⑥ My kids talked me into **getting a puppy**.

### 36.3

- ① drown out
- ② mouth off
- ③ ramble on
- ④ tone down
- ⑤ talk down
- ⑥ launch into

### 36.4

- A 6 B 1 C 2
- D 4 E 3
- F 5

### 36.5

- ① I think you should **tone down** your language.
- ② Andy **blurted out** the name of the winner by mistake.
- ③ The lecturer **droned on** for what felt like hours.
- ④ Marco is always **talking at** people and not letting them speak.
- ⑤ After the concert, I **struck up** a conversation with the guitarist.

### 36.6

- ① Ben's not keen on buying a new car. I'm trying to **talk him round**.
- ② When soccer **came up in** conversation, Bill and I realized we support the same team.
- ③ Craig was trying to tell a joke, but **tailed off** as he realized that no one was listening.
- ④ While Julia was explaining her idea, Rupert **cut in** to tell her she was wrong.
- ⑤ Simone spent the whole of lunch **mouthin' off** about how much she hates her new boss.

## 37

### 37.3

- ① make written notes
- ② reduce in size
- ③ write or type something in full from notes
- ④ write something quickly or roughly
- ⑤ represent, be an abbreviation for
- ⑥ read with great attention
- ⑦ complete a form

### 37.4

- ① Before you can use the gym, you need to fill in this form.
- ② As the judge read out the names of the winners, Pablo waited hopefully.
- ③ When completing the form, Damian wrote in his age.
- ④ Alexandra flicked through a magazine while she waited to get her hair cut.

### 37.5

- ① Max **read through** the full report before giving his opinion.
- ② Ted always **writes out** his essays instead of typing them.
- ③ "UFO" **stands for** Unidentified Flying Object.
- ④ The journalist **jotted down** the details as Dan described his role in the new movie.
- ⑤ Fatima **read up** on ancient Greece before her history exam.

### 37.6

- ① I'll try to cut **out** 500 words from my essay if it is too long.
- ② *Adventures in the Wilderness* should make for interesting reading!
- ③ Paco read the book and noted **down** the most important points.
- ④ We **pored over** the old document looking for clues.

## 38

### 38.4

- ① Rob wants to **follow up** on the conversation we had about the new logo.
- ② Claudia sent wedding invitations **out** to all her friends and family.
- ③ Dave passed **on** a message telling me that Rob had called.
- ④ Sorry, I can't hear you very well, I'm afraid. You keep **breaking up**.
- ⑤ I've called Olly a few times this evening, but I can't get **through**.
- ⑥ Could you please **speak up**? I can't hear you very well!

### 38.5

- ① Chris emailed me a week ago, but I only just remembered to email him back.
- ② Murat completed all the forms and sent them off to the passport office.
- ③ I love receiving letters from my dad. I always write back immediately.
- ④ Claudia sent wedding invitations out to all her friends and family.

### 38.6

- ① put through ② pick up ③ call back
- ④ speak up

### 38.7

- ① Anna works from home on Tuesdays, so she will **dial into** the meeting.
- ② I'll **put you through** to Mr. Yamamoto now, madam.
- ③ Our company is trying to **reach out** to new customers by offering discounts.
- ④ After chatting for over an hour, Simon and I said goodbye **and hung up**.
- ⑤ Hi Laura, sorry I'm cooking at the moment, can I **call you back** in 10 minutes?

## 39

### 39.4

- A 3 B 1 C 7 D 2 E 5 F 4 G 8 H 6

### 39.5

- ① When my husband suggested buying a new kitchen, I did what he suggested.
- ② When I told my friends I was starting my own business, they all offered support.
- ③ They gave us too much information during the training course.



- 4 Experts believe that Joan Miró created this painting because of the distinctive style.  
5 The artist's feelings of anger are communicated strongly in this painting.

### 39.6

SEPARABLE:

**bombard with**  
**bounce off**  
**think over**  
**think through**  
**put to**

INSEPARABLE:

**run with**  
**come across**  
**touch on**  
**come up with**  
**get behind**

### 39.7

- 1 The creative manager asked her team to **throw out** as many ideas as they could.  
2 It finally **dawned on** me that Claude was the killer.  
3 We have **ruled out** three of the candidates. It's a choice between Danny and Carmen.  
4 Ted has **come up** with some good ideas for a new logo.  
5 Selma is very creative. She **thinks up** lots of wonderful dishes.

## 40

### 40.2

- 1 expand on  
2 dumb down  
3 come back to  
4 point out  
5 go back over

### 40.3

- 1 put across 2 dumb down  
3 point out 4 come back to  
5 allude to 6 go back over

## 41

### 41.3

- 1 see through  
2 gloss over  
3 cover up

- 4 add up  
5 fall for  
6 make up  
7 level with

### 41.4

- 1 make out  
2 level with  
3 mess around  
4 add up  
5 put on  
6 catch on

### 41.5

- 1 I think she knows more than she's **letting on**.  
2 We **fell for** the salesman's talk. The car we bought broke down after a few days.  
3 When it **came out** that he was bankrupt, I was shocked!  
4 Conan finally **owned up** to breaking the window. He'd been denying it all morning.  
5 The CEO has been **playing down** the company's financial problems.  
6 I've been trying to **find out** from Nisha who Sammy's dating.  
7 Josie tried to **explain away** the damage to my car by saying it was just a small scratch.

## 42

### 42.2

- 1 Helen has put me onto this great new hair salon. I'm going to check it out.  
2 Lisa's speech in favor of a new nature reserve has brought many people around to the idea.  
3 Kendra was very nervous, but was happy to see her friends **rooting for** her.  
4 Zoe's daughter said her elder brother had put her up to stealing the cookies.

### 42.3

- 1 Kendra was very nervous, but was happy to see her friends **rooting for** her.  
2 Rahul was skeptical about electric cars until the salesman **reasoned with** him.  
3 The crowd **urged** Mona **on** as she approached the end of the tightrope.  
4 He eventually **won him over** by explaining how eco-friendly they are.  
5 My son was upset, so I bought him an ice cream to **buck him up**.

## 43

### 43.3

- 1 During the debate, she hit out at her opponents.  
2 I can count on my sister to comfort me when I'm upset.  
3 Paul usually shrugs off criticism of his cooking.  
4 Carla stood up to the bullies and told them not to be mean.  
5 He pulled her up on her attitude towards the environment.

### 43.4

B, C, D, F, H, I

### 43.5

- 1 Everyone agrees **with** John that Sian should get the job.  
2 Everyone criticized Magda's art, but she rose **above** it and is a successful artist now.  
3 The workers are pushing **back on** the management's policies.  
4 They **disagreed with** each other about what color to paint the kitchen.

### 43.6

- 1 My aunt disapproves.  
2 Paulina always supports our boss.  
3 Laura opposed Ankita's proposals.  
4 Carla defended herself.  
5 They need to solve small problems.

### 43.7

- 1 I think Sonia **has** something **against** me. She never wants to talk to me.  
2 Martin and Simon **disagreed with** each other about what color to paint the kitchen.  
3 Our local representative has **come out against** the plans for a new housing development.  
4 Donna bought her brother some chocolates to **make up for** the things she had said to him.  
5 Terry's colleagues always make fun of his shirts, but he just **laughs it off**.

## 44

### 44.4

- 1 back off 2 speak out 3 take back  
4 stay out of 5 patch up 6 base on  
7 stick up for

## 44.5

A 3 B 6 C 1 D 2 E 5 F 4

## 44.6

- 1 back off 2 stay out of
- 3 back up 4 stick up for
- 5 fall out (with) 6 lash out (at)
- 7 back down

## 44.7

- 1 When Pete showed Martin the facts, Martin had to **climb down** and admit he was wrong.
- 2 The manager **laid into** the players after they lost another match.
- 3 They had **fallen out** when they both applied for the same job.
- 4 Craig's parents finally caved **in** and bought him a games console.
- 5 Sorry, I'm not sure what you're **getting at**.

# 45

## 45.3

- 1 Ed's become stronger.
- 2 She has helped me manage my problems.
- 3 Kathy is trying to recover from it.
- 4 Anna became happier.

## 45.4

- 1 work through
- 2 crack up
- 3 settle down
- 4 light up
- 5 burst out

## 45.5

- 1 Donny's face **lit up** when he saw the presents waiting for him on the table.
- 2 Jack's a very private person, but he finally opened **up** and told me how he feels.
- 3 When Linda feels stressed, she listens to music to help her **calm down**.
- 4 The children burst **out** laughing when the clown pretended to fall over.

## 45.6

- 1 I've been **checking up on** Andrei every day since he lost his job.
- 2 Craig had had a bad day at work, but watching a funny movie **cheered him up**.
- 3 Hiro's jokes are hilarious. He really **cracks me up**.
- 4 Yana was upset, but she **brightened up** when I bought her tickets to a concert.

## 45.7

- 1 Sophie needs to **lighten up**. She's still studying even though it's her birthday today.
- 2 I really **feel for** Kim. She's been so upset since her cat went missing.
- 3 Kathy is finally **moving on** after her breakup with Jamal last year.
- 4 Petra's been sulking for days. I wish she'd **snap out of it**.

# 46

## 46.2

- 1 My husband tenses up whenever I **try to talk about money with him**.
- 2 This song is so moving. **It always sets me off**.
- 3 Troy freaked out when he noticed the **enormous spider climbing up the wall**.
- 4 Clare flew into a rage when her **computer crashed and lost all her work**.
- 5 Stop taking it out on me. **It's not my fault the weather is awful**.
- 6 My grandchildren love to wind me up. **They're always playing tricks on me**.

## 46.3

- 1 Sadie's anger about her boss's rude behavior had been **building up**.
- 2 Tamal and Sam **choked up** when the hero died at the end of the movie.
- 3 When Lisa walked onto the stage she **froze up**. She couldn't say anything!
- 4 He eventually **broke down** and admitted that he was really upset.
- 5 My manager **blew up** when I told him that I'd left my work laptop on the train.

## 46.4

- 1 Bella **welled up** when Pete asked her to marry him.
- 2 It eventually **spilled over**, and Sadie told her how she felt.
- 3 Chris had been **bottling up** his emotions for a long time.
- 4 Work has been **weighing on** me a lot recently.
- 5 Clare **flew into** a rage when her computer crashed and lost all her work.

## 46.5

- 1 get down
- 2 wind up
- 3 break down
- 4 blow up

# 47

## 47.2

- 1 Sonia opted **out** of the boat trip. She always gets sea sick.
- 2 Yasmin has been toying **with** the idea of getting her hair cut short.
- 3 The workers wanted a 5% pay raise, but settled **for** 3%.
- 4 Shona regrets her decision to quit, but she's going to have to live **with** it.
- 5 After a lot of thought, Rob went **for** the fish instead of the steak.

## 47.3

- 1 decide on
- 2 factor in
- 3 mull over
- 4 pick out
- 5 opt out
- 6 lean toward

## 47.4

- 1 weigh up 2 narrow down 3 pick out
- 4 sleep on 5 lean toward

## 47.5

- 1 Moving to New Zealand next year **hinges on us** saving enough money.
- 2 Can you tell us how you **settled on** a winner?
- 3 Lisa found it hard to choose a dress, but eventually **decided on** the red one.
- 4 Stephen is **banking on this** new recipe to impress his guests.

# 48

## 48.2

A 3 B 5 C 1 D 4 E 2

## 48.3

- 1 I was relying on Selma to bring candles for the cake, but she **let me down**.
- 2 I'll never **live down** the time I dropped Erin's birthday cake in the middle of her party.
- 3 Coralie's graph didn't make sense, so she looked through the data again to see where she'd **slipped up**.
- 4 When Chris got home from work, he realized that he had **mixed** his bag up **with** Simon's.
- 5 The spelling mistake in Juanita's homework **jumped out at** me.



## 49

### 49.4

- ① After the leak in the room above, it looked like the ceiling might fall in.
- ② The dog knocked over the plant pot as it chased the cat.
- ③ Jorge took the old clock apart to fix it.
- ④ When I got home, I found that the dog had torn a cushion apart.

### 49.5

A 3 B 1 C 4 D 6 E 2 F 5

### 49.6

- ① smash up
- ② wear out
- ③ bang into
- ④ trip over
- ⑤ fall in
- ⑥ break off

### 49.7

- ① I **banged into** the door while leaving the house.
- ② Colin accidentally drove into a tree and **smashed up** his van.
- ③ Rodrigo slammed the door so hard that the pictures **fell off** the wall.
- ④ The old book **came apart** in the librarian's hands.
- ⑤ The drain was **clogged up** with old leaves, so I had to unblock it.
- ⑥ Sanjay's old car is **falling apart**. He's had it since he was a teenager.
- ⑦ The old manor house Andrei wants to buy looks as if it's about to **fall down**.

## 50

### 50.2

A 5 B 1 C 6 D 4 E 2 F 3 G 8 H 7

### 50.3

- ① Whenever Gitanjali has a problem, she goes to her grandmother for advice.
- ② While climbing the mountain, we had to deal with strong winds and heavy rain.
- ③ The proposals for a new highway have encountered a lot of local opposition.
- ④ One of the pipes was leaking, so we asked a plumber to fix it.
- ⑤ Writing your thesis is easier if you separate it into small sections.

- ⑥ It's taken me all evening to find out how to turn on this new television.

### 50.4

SEPARABLE:

**break down**  
**thrash out**  
**brush aside**  
**think through**

INSEPARABLE:

**turn to**  
**come up against**  
**crop up**  
**get around**

### 50.5

- ① turn out
- ② think through
- ③ sort out
- ④ clear up
- ⑤ brush aside
- ⑥ thrash out
- ⑦ check out

## 51

### 51.3

- ① I didn't mean to tell the team that it was **your birthday**. It just slipped out.
- ② The movie star tried to hush up **the fact that she had a new boyfriend**.
- ③ Jessica has been keeping **the name of her new boyfriend from me**.
- ④ I was bowled over when Nadia announced **that she had been accepted into dance school**.
- ⑤ Mollie crept up on her grandfather **while he slept in the garden**.

### 51.4

- ① Clara can't believe she passed her exams. It's going to take a while for it to **sink in**.
- ② People have woken up to the fact that we need to look after the environment.
- ③ I was shopping at the antiques market when I stumbled **upon** a valuable necklace.
- ④ My best friend **sprang** it on me last night that she's moving to Canada.
- ⑤ I was taken **aback** when Tia and Juan told me they were getting married.

### 51.5

- ① play along
- ② bump into
- ③ cotton onto
- ④ give away

### 51.6

- ① I stumbled **upon** a valuable necklace at the antiques market.
- ② Jessica has been keeping the name of her new boyfriend from me.

- ③ Mollie crept up on her grandfather while he slept in the garden.
- ④ We were all **eating** our dinner when the dog burst into the room.

## 52

### 52.4

- ① be removed
- ② appear (on screen)
- ③ do something to solve a problem
- ④ have an opinion of something
- ⑤ go toward a place
- ⑥ escape with something
- ⑦ abolish, no longer need or use

### 52.5

A 6 B 5 C 1 D 3 E 2 F 4

### 52.6

- ① Riya was disappointed with her wedding cake, and insisted it be **done over**.
- ② With hot weather expected, thousands of tourists **made for** the coast.
- ③ Lots of talented people **make up** our circus's team of acrobats.
- ④ Natsuo **came across** the room to speak to us.
- ⑤ The council has to decide what it's going to **do about** the litter problem.
- ⑥ Luanne struggled to **make out** what the train conductor was saying.
- ⑦ No matter how much we clean it, this graffiti won't **come off** the wall.

### 52.7

- ① Hetty's career as a musician **came about** after a producer saw her performing.
- ② Derek sat down in front of the TV when the ten o'clock news **came on**.
- ③ Luanne struggled to **make out** what the train conductor was saying.
- ④ When I tried to log in, a message **came up** saying that my account had been blocked.
- ⑤ Lots of talented people **make up** our circus's team of acrobats.

## 53

### 53.3

- ① Cheryl's dog keeps **getting over** the fence into the neighbor's backyard.
- ② Harry burned the dinner and **set off** the smoke detector.

- ③ As Martin walked home late at night, fear began to **set in**.  
 ④ It's almost eleven o'clock. We should **get down** to work.  
 ⑤ Mary **set out** all her qualifications and experience in her resume.  
 ⑥ Lee's speed **sets him apart from** the other players in the tournament.

### 53.4

SEPARABLE:

**set back**  
**set on**  
**get across**  
**get together**

INSEPARABLE:

**get around**  
**get up (from)**  
**get to**  
**set in**

### 53.5

- ① set on ② get to ③ set back  
 ④ get back at ⑤ get across  
 ⑥ get together ⑦ set up

### 53.6

- ① Lee **got** his fishing **rod out** of the garage and carried it to his car.  
 ② The security guard threatened to **set** his dog **on** us if we didn't leave immediately.  
 ③ Can you help me **get** the shopping **in**, please?  
 ④ Before accusing Simon, the police had to **get** their facts **together**.  
 ⑤ As soon as we **got to** the ski resort, we went straight to the slopes.

## 54

### 54.2

- ① My daughter attends ballet classes every Saturday morning.  
 ② There's something happening next door. I can hear loud music.  
 ③ James reviewed the company's accounts to check for mistakes.  
 ④ Help yourself to some cakes. There are enough for everyone.  
 ⑤ Malachai experienced a period of unhappiness after his dog died.  
 ⑥ After I got back from the dentist, it took a couple of hours for the pain to disappear.

### 54.3

- A 5 B 1 C 2 D 6 E 4 F 3  
 G 8 H 7

### 54.4

- ① Michelle and I go back years. I've known her since kindergarten.  
 ② My new trainer is called Zachariah, though he usually goes by Zac.  
 ③ Buying water in plastic bottles goes against my principles.  
 ④ As soon as I realized Orla had forgotten her bag, I went after her.  
 ⑤ The children watched the hot-air balloon slowly go up into the air.

### 54.5

- ① Parents often have to **go** without sleep when they have a new baby.  
 ② Help yourself to some cakes. There are enough to **go around**.  
 ③ Kelly's decided to **go for** the job at the software company. It's very well paid.  
 ④ Rob and I sat on the beach watching the sun **go down**.  
 ⑤ A team of firefighters went **into** the burning building.  
 ⑥ All the money we make today will **go toward** funding the new school library.  
 ⑦ Even though it was a cloudy day, Ramon decided to **go ahead** with the picnic.

## 55

### 55.4

- ① Cassie followed the instructions carefully to put her new wardrobe **together**.  
 ② The waste collectors came to take away the bags of trash.  
 ③ Martha played the violin as a child, but gave it up when she left school.  
 ④ The police stopped the criminal, and took the stolen money from him.  
 ⑤ Liam finished decorating the cake and put it **on a stand**.

### 55.5

- ① The café on the high street is **giving out** samples of their new range of cookies.  
 ② Denise took a jar **down** from the shelf to give her dog a biscuit.  
 ③ Angela is upset about her divorce, but she's trying to **put** it behind her.  
 ④ Seeing the black clouds, Tim went outside to take the washing **in**.

- ⑤ My son had been asking for an ice cream all day. I finally **gave in** and bought him one.

### 55.6

- ① The fitness instructor put the class **through a tough training program**.  
 ② Scarlett had to put up with **busy trains every day on her way to work**.  
 ③ Angela is upset about her divorce, **but she's trying to put it behind her**.  
 ④ Amara took her mother aside to **tell her that she was pregnant**.  
 ⑤ The café on the high street is giving out **free samples of their new cakes**.  
 ⑥ Eliza has really taken to golf. **She never thought she'd like it**.  
 ⑦ Jim's mother asked him to take **his younger brother along to the skate park**.

### 55.7

- ① Denise took a jar down from the shelf to give her dog a biscuit.  
 ② Angela is upset about her divorce, but she's trying to put it behind her.  
 ③ Seeing the black clouds, Tim went outside to take the washing in.  
 ④ Eliza has really taken to golf. She never thought she'd like it.  
 ⑤ Amara took her mother aside to tell her that she was pregnant.

## 56

### 56.2

- ① fire away ② come in ③ bring it on  
 ④ go ahead

### 56.3

- ① go away ② look out ③ go ahead  
 ④ fire away ⑤ bring it on ⑥ get out  
 ⑦ come on ⑧ come in

# Index of phrasal verbs

Numbers refer to the  
module number

## A

act out **40.1**  
add on **25.1**  
add together **25.2**  
add up **14.1, 25.1, 41.2**  
agree with **43.1**  
aim at **33.1, 34.2**  
allow for **17.1**  
allude to **40.1**  
amount to **26.3**  
answer back **21.2**  
apply for **23.1**  
arrive at **35.1, 47.1**  
ask after **1.1**  
ask out **3.2**  
attribute to **39.2**  
average out (at) **25.1**

## B

back down **44.3**  
back off **44.3**  
back out **17.2**  
back up **12.1, 44.2**  
backup **R6**  
bang into **49.1**  
bank on **47.1**  
base on **44.1**  
beat up **13.1**  
beaten-up **R6**  
bet on **47.1**  
blow away **51.2**  
blow out **27.3**  
blow over **11.1**  
blow up **46.1**  
blurt out **36.1, 51.1**  
boil down to **39.3**  
boil over **29.1**  
bombard with **39.1**  
boot up (UK) **12.1**  
bottle up **46.1**

bottom out **25.1**  
bounce back **32.1**  
bounce off **39.1**  
bowl over **51.2**  
branch out (into) **23.1**  
break down **9.1, 46.1, 50.1**  
*see also* broken-down **R6**  
breakdown **R5**  
break-in **R5**  
break in(to) **13.1**  
break off **30.1, 49.1**  
break out (of) **13.1**  
break up **3.2, 15.1, 21.1, 29.1, 38.1**  
breakup **R5**  
brighten up **11.1, 45.1**  
bring about **7.1**  
bring along **4.2**  
bring around **42.1**  
bring back **16.2, 35.1**  
bring forward (to) **16.3**  
bring in **13.1**  
bring it on **56.1**  
bring out **10.1**  
bring together **3.1**  
bring up **2.1**  
broken-down **R6**  
brush aside **50.1**  
buck up **42.1**  
bucket down **11.1**  
build on **26.1**  
build up **46.1**  
bump into **51.2**  
burn off **33.2**  
burn out **23.1**  
burst in(to) **51.2**  
burst out **45.1**  
butter up **1.1**  
button up **6.1**  
buy out **24.1**  
buy up **10.1**  
bygone **R6**

## C

call back **38.1**  
call for **13.2**  
call in **4.1, 22.1, 50.1**  
call off **22.2**  
call on **13.2**  
calm down **11.1, 45.2**  
care for **3.2, 32.1**  
carry off **26.1**  
carry on **21.2**  
carry out **22.3**  
cash in on **23.1**  
catch on **41.1**  
catch out **41.2**  
catch up (with) **5.1**  
catch up on **22.3**  
cater for **30.1**  
cave in **44.3**  
chase up **22.3**  
check in(to) **35.1**  
check off **10.1**  
check out **10.1, 35.1, 50.1**  
checkout **R5**  
check up on **45.2**  
checkup **R5**  
cheer on **33.1**  
cheer up **45.1**  
chicken out **17.2**  
chill out **31.2**  
chip in **14.1**  
choke up **46.1**  
chop down **28.2**  
chop up **29.2**  
clean up **28.1**  
clear away **28.1**  
clear out **28.1**  
clear up **11.1, 32.1, 50.1**  
click on **12.2**  
climb down **19.1, 44.3**  
climb up **19.1**  
clock in **22.1**

clock off **22.1**  
clog up **49.2**  
close down **24.1**  
cloud over **11.1**  
color in **34.1**  
come about **52.1**  
come across **1.2, 39.2, 52.1**  
come along **5.1, 31.1, 52.1**  
come apart **49.1**  
come around **15.1, 32.1**  
come back **2.2**  
come back to **40.1**  
come down (from) **19.1**  
come down to **47.1**  
come down with **32.1**  
come in **4.1, 56.1**  
*see also* incoming **R6**  
come into **14.1**  
come off **6.1, 26.1, 52.1**  
come off it **56.1**  
come on **27.3, 52.1, 56.1**  
come out **5.1, 6.1, 12.3, 41.1, 52.1**  
come out against **43.1**  
come out with **36.1**  
come over **4.2**  
come through **52.1**  
come to **14.1, 24.1**  
come under **52.1**  
come up **16.1, 36.1, 50.1, 52.1**  
*see also* upcoming **R6**  
come up against **50.1**  
come up to **19.1**  
come up with **39.1**  
compete with **7.2**  
confide in **3.1**  
consist of **29.1**  
contend with **50.1**  
contribute to **26.3**  
cool down **11.1, 29.1**  
cope with **45.2**  
cordon off **13.1**  
cotton on(to) (UK) **51.1**

cough up **14.1**  
 count down **25.1**  
 count on **43.1**  
 count out **25.1**  
 count toward **20.1**  
 count up **25.1**  
 cover up **6.1, 41.2**  
 cover-up **R5**  
 crack down (on) **13.1**  
 crackdown **R5**  
 crack up **45.1**  
 cram in (UK) **20.1**  
 creep up on **15.1, 51.2**  
 crop up **50.1**  
 cross off **10.1**  
 cross out **48.1**  
 curl up **31.2**  
 cut back **14.1, 28.2**  
 cut down **37.1**  
 cut in **36.1**  
 cut off **29.2**  
 cut out **9.1, 37.1**

## D

dash off (UK) **5.2**  
 date back to **16.2**  
 dawn on **39.2**  
 deal in **24.1**  
 deal with **50.1**  
 decide on **47.1**  
 dial in(to) **38.1**  
 die away **34.3**  
 die down **11.1**  
 die out **7.1**  
 dig up **28.2**  
 dip into **37.2**  
 disagree with **43.1**  
 dive in(to) **20.1**  
 divide by **25.2**  
 divide up (into) **25.1**  
 do about **52.3**  
 do away with **52.3**  
 do over (US) **52.3**  
 do up **6.1, 52.3**  
 do without **30.1**  
 double back **19.1**  
 doze off **8.4**

drag into **44.2**  
 drag on **15.1**  
 drag out **15.1**  
 draw on **23.1**  
 draw out **15.1**  
     *see also drawn-out* **R6**  
 draw up **24.1**  
 drawn-out **R6**  
 dress up (as) **6.1**  
 drift apart **3.1**  
 drink to **30.2**  
 drink up **30.2**  
 drive off **9.2**  
 drone on **36.1**  
 drop back **19.1**  
 drop in **4.1**  
 drop off **8.4, 9.1**  
 drop out **21.1**  
 drown out **36.1**  
 drum up **24.1**  
 dumb down **40.1**

## E

ease off **11.1**  
 eat in **30.1**  
 eat into **15.1**  
 eat out **30.1**  
 eat up **30.1**  
 egg on **42.1**  
 email back **38.3**  
 end up **17.1, 35.1**  
 enter into **24.1**  
 even out **25.1**  
 expand on **40.1**  
 explain away **41.2**

## F

face up to **7.1**  
 factor in **47.1**  
 fade away **34.3**  
 fade in **34.3**  
 fall apart **46.1, 49.3**  
 fall back on **23.1**  
 fall behind **19.1, 20.1**  
 fall down **49.3**  
 fall for **3.2, 41.2**

fall in **49.3**  
 fall off **49.3**  
 fall out **44.3, 49.3**  
     *see also falling-out* **R5**  
 fall over **49.3**  
 fall through **24.1**  
     falling-out **R5**  
 farm out (to) **24.1**  
 feed on **34.2**  
 feel for **45.2**  
 feel up to **32.1**  
 fight back **43.1**  
 figure out **50.1**  
 fill in **37.1, 40.1**  
 fill up **29.1**  
 filter out **34.3**  
 find out **41.1**  
 finish off **29.2**  
 finish with (UK) **3.2**  
 fire away **56.1**  
 firm up **17.1**  
 fish out **29.1**  
 fit in **1.1, 15.1**  
 fizzle out **3.2**  
 flare up **32.1**  
 flick through **37.2**  
 flood back **16.2**  
 flood in **1.1**  
 fly into **46.1**  
 focus on **20.1**  
 fold up **6.1**  
 follow up (on) **38.2**  
 follow-up **R6**  
 fork out (for) **14.1**  
 freak out **46.1**  
 free up **15.1**  
 freeze over **11.1**  
 freeze up **46.1**  
 freshen up **8.1**  
 frown on **43.1**  
 fuss over **1.1**

## G

gang up (on) **1.1**  
 gather up **1.2**  
 get across **53.1**  
 get ahead (at) **23.1**

get around **35.1, 50.1, 53.1**  
 get around to **17.1**  
 get at **44.1**  
 get away **13.1, 35.1**  
 getaway **R5, R6**  
 get away with **21.2**  
 get back (from) **1.2, 35.1**  
 get back at **53.1**  
 get back into **31.1**  
 get back to **38.2**  
 get back together **3.2**  
 get behind **39.1**  
 get by **14.1**  
 get down **19.1, 46.1, 53.1**  
 get down to **53.1**  
 get in **8.1, 9.1, 53.1**  
 get in on **26.3**  
 get into **23.1, 31.1**  
 get off **9.1, 22.1**  
 get on **2.1, 9.1, 15.1**  
 get on with **8.3**  
 get out **9.1, 53.1, 56.1**  
 get out of **17.2, 31.1**  
 get over **32.1, 45.2, 53.1**  
 get over with **53.1**  
 get through (to) **33.1, 38.1**  
 get to **46.1, 53.1**  
 get together **5.1, 53.1**  
 get-together **R5**  
 get up **8.1, 53.1**  
 give away **51.1, 55.3**  
 giveaway **R5**  
 give in **55.3**  
 give out **55.3**  
 give up **26.2, 55.3**  
 gloss over **41.2**  
 go about **54.1**  
 go after **54.1**  
 go against **54.1**  
 go ahead **54.1, 56.1**  
 go-ahead **R5**  
 go along **54.1**  
 go along with **43.1**  
 go around **32.1, 54.1**  
 go away **54.1, 56.1**  
 go back **16.3, 35.1, 54.1**  
 go back on **17.2**  
 go back over **40.1**



go back to **23.1**  
 go by **15.1, 54.1**  
*see also* bygone **R6**  
 go down **12.1, 32.1, 54.1**  
 go for **47.1, 54.1**  
 go forward **16.3**  
 go in(to) **54.1**  
 go into **23.1**  
 go off **3.1, 8.1, 27.3, 30.1, 35.1**  
 go on **54.1**  
*see also* ongoing **R6**  
 go out **3.2, 5.1, 27.3, 54.1**  
*see also* outgoing **R6**  
 go over **54.1**  
 go through **19.1, 54.1**  
 go through with **17.1**  
 go to **54.1**  
 go together **30.1**  
 go toward **54.1**  
 go under **24.1**  
 go up **54.1**  
 go with **6.1**  
 go without **54.1**  
 goof off (US) **21.2**  
 grow into **6.1**  
 grow out of **2.1, 6.1**  
 grow up **2.1**

## H

hack into **12.1**  
 hammer out **17.1**  
 hand in (to) **21.1**  
 hand out (to) **21.1**  
 hand over **13.1**  
 hang on **15.2**  
 hang out **5.1, 28.1**  
 hang over **50.1**  
 hang up **6.1, 38.1**  
 have (something) against **43.1**  
 have off **22.3**  
 have over **4.1**  
 head for **35.1**  
 head off (to) **5.2, 8.1**  
 head up **23.1**  
 heal up (UK) **32.1**  
 hear about **18.1**  
 hear from **3.1**

hear out **18.1**  
 heat up **29.1**  
 hinge on **47.1**  
 hire out (UK) **5.1**  
 hit out at **43.1**  
 hold up **15.2**  
 hurry up **15.1**  
 hush up **51.1**

## I

impact on **7.1**  
 improve on **7.2**  
 incoming **R6**  
 input **R5**  
 intake **R5**  
 invite along (to) **4.1**  
 invite in **4.1**  
 invite over **4.2**  
 iron out **43.2**

## J

join in **33.1**  
 jot down **37.1**  
 jump out (at) **48.1**

## K

keep at **31.1**  
 keep from **33.1, 51.1**  
 keep up (with) **20.1, 33.1**  
 kick back **31.2**  
 kickoff **R5**  
 knock down **10.1**  
 knockdown **R6**  
 knock out (of) **33.1**  
 knock over **49.1**  
 knuckle down **22.3**

## L

land in **48.1**  
 lash out (at) **44.1**  
 laugh off **43.2**  
 launch into **36.1**  
 lay into **44.1**  
 lay off **24.1**

lay out **20.2**  
 laze about **31.2**  
 lead to **7.1**  
 lead up to **16.1**  
 lean toward **47.1**  
 leave behind **48.1**  
 leave on **27.3**  
 leave out **29.2**  
 leftover **R6**  
 let down **48.1**  
 letdown **R5**  
 let in **2.2**  
 let off (with) **21.2**  
 let on **41.1**  
 let out **2.2, 6.1**  
 let up **11.1**  
 level out **25.1**  
 level with **41.1**  
 lie ahead **16.1**  
 lie around **31.2**  
 lie down **8.2**  
 lift up **19.1**  
*see also* uplifting **R6**  
 light up **45.1**  
 lighten up **45.1**  
 line up **10.1**  
 listen in (on) **18.1**  
 listen out for **18.1**  
 listen to **18.1**  
 listen up **18.1**  
 live down **48.1**  
 live for **31.1**  
 live off **14.1**  
 live on **14.1**  
 live up to **7.2**  
 live with **2.1, 47.1**  
 liven up **5.1**  
 lock away **27.1**  
 lock in **27.1**  
 lock out **27.1**  
 log in(to) **12.1**  
 log out (of) **12.1**  
 look after **2.1**  
 look ahead **17.1**  
 look around **10.1**  
 look at **18.3**  
 look away **18.3**  
 look back (on) **16.2**

look down on **1.1**  
 look for **18.3**  
 look forward to **16.1**  
 look into **18.3, 20.1**  
 look on **18.3**  
 look out **56.1**  
 look out for **18.3**  
 look out over **18.3**  
 look over **18.3**  
 look through **18.3**  
 look up **20.1**  
 look up to **1.1**  
 loosen up **31.2**  
 lose out (to) **26.2**

## M

made-up **R6**  
 major in (US) **20.1**  
 make for **37.2, 52.2**  
 make into **34.1**  
 make of **52.2**  
 make off with **52.2**  
 make out **41.2, 52.2**  
 make up **41.2, 44.3, 52.2**  
*see also* made-up **R6**  
 make up for **43.2**  
 mark down **20.2**  
 measure out **29.1**  
 measure up (to) **7.2**  
 meet up (with) **22.2**  
 mess around **21.2, 41.2**  
 mess up **49.1**  
 mill around **5.1**  
 miss out **48.1**  
 mist over **46.1**  
 mix in **29.1**  
 mix up (with) **48.1**  
 mix-up **R5**  
 mock up **34.1**  
 mop up **28.1**  
 mount up **25.1**  
 mouth off **36.1**  
 move along **19.1**  
 move away **27.2**  
 move in(to) **27.2**  
 move on **20.2, 45.2**  
 move out (of) **27.2**

muddle through **26.1**  
mull over **47.1**  
multiply by **25.2**

## N

name after **2.1**  
narrow down **47.1**  
nod off **8.4**  
not agree with **30.1**  
not stand for **21.2**  
note down **37.1**

## O

object to **43.1**  
occur to **39.2**  
off-putting **R6**  
ongoing **R6**  
open up **24.1, 45.2**  
opt out **47.1**  
outdated **R6**  
outgoing **R6**  
outspoken **R6**  
outstanding **R6**  
outstretched **R6**  
outset **R5**  
own up (to) **41.1**

## P

pack in **35.1**  
pack into **1.1**  
pack up **21.1**  
pan out **16.1**  
part with **1.2**  
pass away **32.1**  
pass by **35.1**  
pass on **32.1, 38.2**  
pass out **32.1**  
patch up **44.3**  
pay back **14.1**  
pay for **10.1**  
pay in(to) **14.1**  
pay off **14.1, 26.1**  
pay up **14.1**  
pencil in **22.2**  
perk up **45.1**

phase in **12.3**  
phase out **12.3**  
phone around **38.1**  
pick out **47.1**  
pick up **9.1, 10.1, 11.1, 28.1, 31.1, 38.1**  
pile up **22.3**  
pin down **17.1**  
pitch in **28.1**  
plan ahead **17.1**  
play along **51.2**  
play down **41.2**  
play up (UK) **21.2**  
plug away (at) **22.3**  
plug in(to) **27.3**  
point out **40.1**  
polish off **30.1**  
pop in (UK) **4.1**  
pore over **37.2**  
potter about **8.2**  
pour down **11.1**  
pour in **29.2**  
press on **19.1**  
print out **12.2**  
printout **R5**  
profit from **24.1**  
pull in(to) **9.2**  
pull off **26.1**  
pull out (of) **9.2**  
pull over **9.2, 13.1**  
pull through **32.1**  
pull together **2.1**  
pull up **9.2, 28.2**  
pull up on (UK) **43.1**  
push back **16.3, 43.1**  
put across **40.1**  
put away **28.2**  
put back **28.1**  
put behind **55.1**  
put down **55.1**  
put down to **26.3**  
put forward **39.1**  
put in **2.2**  
*see also* input **R5**  
put off **23.1, 55.1**  
*see also* off-putting **R6**  
put on **6.1, 27.3, 41.2, 55.1**  
put onto **42.1**

put out **55.1**  
put through **38.1, 55.1**  
put to **39.1**  
put together **55.1**  
put up **28.1, 35.1**  
put up to **42.1**  
put up with **55.1**

## R

ramble on **36.1**  
rank among **33.1**  
reach out (to) **38.3**  
read out **37.2**  
read through **37.2**  
read up on **37.2**  
reason with **42.1**  
reflect on **39.3**  
remind of **16.2**  
result in **7.1**  
ride on **26.3**  
rise above **43.2**  
roll in **11.1**  
roll out **12.3**  
root for **42.1**  
round down (to) **25.1**  
round up (to) **25.1**  
rub (it) in **48.1**  
rule out **39.1**  
run away **2.2**  
rundown **R6**  
run for **13.2**  
run into **14.1, 26.2**  
run out (of) **15.1, 30.1**  
run up **14.1**  
run with **39.1**

## S

sail through **26.1**  
save up **14.1**  
scrape by **26.1**  
screw up **26.2**  
scribble down **37.1**  
scroll down (to) **12.2**  
scroll up (to) **12.2**  
see through **41.1**  
seize up **32.1**

sell off **24.1**  
sell out (of) **10.1**  
sell up **24.1**  
send back **10.1**  
send off **33.1, 38.3**  
send out (to) **38.3**  
serve up **30.1**  
set about (UK) **8.3**  
set apart (from) **53.2**  
set aside **29.2**  
set back **53.2**  
setback **R5**  
set in **53.2**  
set off **35.1, 46.1, 53.2**  
set on **53.2**  
set out **23.1, 35.1, 53.2**  
set up **3.2, 12.1, 53.2**  
settle down **2.1, 45.2**  
settle for **47.1**  
settle in(to) **27.2**  
settle on **47.1**  
settle up (with) **14.1**  
shake off **32.1**  
share out **30.1**  
shine through **45.1**  
shoot down **43.1**  
shoot off (UK) **5.2**  
shoot up **25.1**  
shop around **10.1**  
show around **4.1**  
show off (to) **6.1**  
show out **4.1**  
shrug off **43.2**  
shut down **12.1**  
shut up **36.1**  
side with **43.1**  
sign off on **24.1**  
sign up (for) **33.1**  
sink in **51.2**  
sit around **31.2**  
sit down **8.2**  
size up **33.1**  
slack off **22.3**  
sleep in **8.4**  
sleep off **8.4**  
sleep on **47.1**  
sleep over **8.4**  
sleepover **R5**

sleep through **8.4**  
 slip out **5.2 51.1**  
 slip up **48.1**  
 slog away (at) **22.3**  
 slow down **9.1**  
 smash up **49.2**  
 smell of **18.2**  
 smooth over (with) **44.3**  
 snap out of **45.2**  
 snap up **10.1**  
 sniff around **18.2**  
 snoop around **4.1**  
 soak up **35.1**  
 soldier on **22.1**  
 sort out **50.1**  
 speak out **44.1**  
   *see also* outspoken **R6**  
 speak up **38.1**  
 speed up **9.1**  
 spell out **40.1**  
 spill out (of) **1.1**  
 spill over **46.1**  
 splash out (on) **10.1**  
 spring on **51.2**  
 spur on **42.1**  
 spy on **18.3**  
 stack up **25.1**  
 stamp out **13.1**  
 stand by **3.1**  
 stand down **23.1**  
 stand for **37.2**  
 stand up **19.1**  
 stand up to **43.1**  
 start off **11.1**  
 start out **31.1**  
 start over (US) **20.1**  
 start up **24.1**  
 stay in **5.1**  
 stay out **5.1**  
 stay out of **44.2**  
 stay over **4.2**  
 stay up **8.3**  
 stick around **4.1**  
 stick at **31.1**  
 stick by **3.1**  
 stick together **3.1**  
 stick up for **44.2**  
 stick with **23.1**

stink out **18.2**  
 stir up **16.2**  
 stock up (on) **10.1**  
 stop off **4.1**  
 stop over **35.1**  
 stopover **R5**  
 storm out (of) **5.2**  
 stressed-out **R6**  
 stretch out **33.2**  
   *see also* outstretched **R6**  
 strike up **36.1**  
 string along **41.2**  
 stumble upon **51.2**  
 sum up **20.2**  
 suss out (UK) **41.1**  
 sweep up **28.1**  
 swell up **32.1**  
 swing by **4.1**  
 swot up on (UK) **20.1**

**T**  
 tag along **5.1**  
 tail off **36.1**  
 take aback **51.2**  
 take after **2.1**  
 take along (to) **55.2**  
 take apart **49.2**  
 take aside **55.2**  
 take away **25.2, 30.1, 55.2**  
   *see also* takeaway (UK) **R5**  
 take back **10.1, 16.2, 44.3, 55.2**  
 take in **6.1, 51.2, 55.2**  
   *see also* intake **R5**  
 take off **5.2, 6.1, 9.1, 22.1, 55.2**  
 take on **24.1**  
 take out **3.2, 14.1, 21.1, 28.1**  
   *see also* takeout (US) **R5**  
 take out on **46.1**  
 take over **23.1**  
 take to **55.2**  
 take up **15.1, 31.1, 55.2**  
 talk at **36.1**  
 talk down to **36.1**  
 talk into **36.1**  
 talk out of **36.1**  
 talk over **22.2, 36.1**  
 talk round (UK) **36.1**

talk through **36.1**  
 taste of **18.2**  
 tear apart **49.2**  
 tear away (from) **5.2**  
 tear up **49.2**  
 tell apart **2.1**  
 tell from **13.1**  
 tell off **21.2**  
 tense up **46.1**  
 text back **38.3**  
 think ahead **17.1**  
 think back (to) **16.2**  
 think of **39.3**  
 think over **39.3**  
 think through **39.3, 50.1**  
 think up **39.3**  
 thrash out **50.1**  
 throw away **28.1, 31.1**  
 throw on **6.1**  
 throw (oneself) into **23.1**  
 throw out **17.1, 39.1**  
 throw together **17.1**  
 throw up **32.1**  
 tidy up (UK) **28.1**  
 tie up **6.1**  
 time out **15.1**  
 tip off **13.1**  
 tired out **R6**  
 tone down **36.1**  
 top up **30.2**  
 touch down **9.1**  
 touch on **39.1**  
 toughen up **45.2**  
 toy with **47.1**  
 track down **13.1**  
 trip over **49.1**  
 try on **10.1**  
 try out **10.1**  
 tune in(to) **34.2**  
 turn around **19.1, 33.1**  
 turn away **5.2, 19.1**  
 turn back **9.2**  
 turn back into **16.3**  
 turn down **27.3**  
 turn in **8.4**  
 turn into **16.3**  
 turn off **9.2, 27.3**  
 turn on **1.1, 27.3**

turn onto **9.2**  
 turn out **50.1**  
 turn over **24.1**  
 turn to **13.1, 21.1, 45.2, 50.1**  
 turn up **1.2, 4.1, 27.3**  
 type in **12.2**  
 type out **12.2**  
 type up **37.1**

**U**  
 upcoming **R6**  
 uplifting **R6**  
 urge on **42.1**

**V**  
 vote for **13.2**  
 vote on **13.2**

**W**  
 wait around (for) **15.2**  
 wait for **15.2**  
 wait up **2.1**  
 wake up **8.1**  
 wake up to **51.2**  
 walk around **19.2**  
 walk in(to) **19.2**  
 walk into **23.1**  
 walk off **19.2**  
 walk out (of) **19.2**  
 walk over **19.2**  
 warm down **33.2**  
 warm to **2.2**  
 warm up **11.1, 33.2**  
 wash down **30.2**  
 wash up (UK) **28.1**  
 watch out (for) **13.1**  
 watch over **1.1**  
 water down **44.3**  
 wear down **1.1**  
 wear off **32.1**  
 wear out **33.2, 49.2**  
   *see also* worn-out **R6**  
 weasel out of **17.2**  
 weigh in (on) **44.1**  
 weigh on **46.1**

weigh up **47.1**  
well up **46.1**  
while away **15.1**  
whip up **29.1**  
win back **3.2**  
win out **26.1**  
win over **42.1**  
wind down **23.1, 31.2**  
wind up **46.1**  
wipe down **28.1**

wipe off **14.1, 21.1**  
wipe out **33.2**  
wolf down **30.1**  
work around **50.1**  
work off **33.2**  
work on **21.1**  
work out **20.1, 26.1, 33.2**  
workout **R5**  
work through **20.1, 45.2**  
work toward **31.1**

worn-out **R6**  
wrap up **6.1**  
wriggle out of **17.2**  
write back **38.3**  
write down **37.1**  
write in **37.1**  
write off **24.1**  
write out **37.1**  
write up **37.1**

**Z**  
zip up **6.1**  
zoom in **12.2**  
zoom out **12.2**

---

# Acknowledgments

## The publisher would like to thank:

Ankita Awasthi Tröger and Hina Jain for editorial assistance; Anna Scully and Noopur Dalal for design assistance; Laura Caddell for proofreading; Christine Stroyan for audio recording management; ID Audio for audio recording and production; DTP Designer Harish Aggarwal; Jackets Editorial Coordinator Priyanka Sharma; and Managing Jackets Editor Saloni Singh.

All images are copyright DK. For more information, please visit  
**[www.dkimages.com](http://www.dkimages.com)**